

THE
2711
SPECTRUM
ANALYZER

User
Manual

***Please check for CHANGE INFORMATION
at the rear of this manual.***

First Printing DEC 1991

Tektronix®
COMMITTED TO EXCELLENCE

Copyright © 1991 by Tektronix, Inc., Beaverton, Oregon.
Printed in the United States of America. All rights
reserved. Contents of this publication may not be
reproduced in any form without permission of Tektronix,
Inc.

U.S. and foreign Tektronix products covered by U.S. and
foreign patents and/or patents pending.

Specification and price change privileges reserved.

TEKTRONIX is a registered trademark of Tektronix, Inc.

THE
2711
SPECTRUM
ANALYZER

**User
Manual**

*Please check for **CHANGE INFORMATION**
at the rear of this manual.*

First Printing DEC 1991

Tektronix®
COMMITTED TO EXCELLENCE

Copyright © 1991 by Tektronix, Inc., Beaverton, Oregon.
Printed in the United States of America. All rights
reserved. Contents of this publication may not be
reproduced in any form without permission of Tektronix,
Inc.

U.S. and foreign Tektronix products covered by U.S. and
foreign patents and/or patents pending.

Specification and price change privileges reserved.

TEKTRONIX is a registered trademark of Tektronix, Inc.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Operators Safety Summary

Terms In This Manual	ix
Terms Marked On Equipment	ix
AC Power Source	x
DC Power Source	x
Product Grounding	x
Input Power and Voltage Limitations	xi
Use The Proper Fuse	xii
General Precautions	xii

Section 1 – Introduction

Manual Organization	1-1
Typographical Conventions	1-3
What Is a Spectrum Analyzer?	1-5
What Can You Do with a Spectrum Analyzer?	1-6
About the 2711	1-6

Section 2 – Specifications

Introduction	2-1
Electrical Characteristics	2-1
Environmental Characteristics	2-13
Physical Specifications	2-14

Section 3 – Getting Acquainted With Your Instrument

Receiving and Unpacking	3-1
Packaging and Storing	3-1
Installation	3-2
Precautions	3-3
System Checkout	3-4
Turning on the 2711	3-4
Initial Normalization	3-6
Restoring the Factory Default Settings	3-7
The Initial Display	3-8
Control Panel Basics	3-10
Sounds	3-12
The Built-in Calibrator	3-12
Making Your First Measurement	3-13

Section 4 – Operation Summary

Display Screen	4-1
Connectors, Controls, and Menus	4-3

Section 5 – Dedicated Controls

Fundamental Operations	5-1
SPAN/DIV $\uparrow\downarrow$	5-2
MAX (Span)	5-4
ZERO (Span)	5-4
FREQUENCY $\uparrow\downarrow$ and FREQ/MKRS Knob	5-5
REF LEVEL $\uparrow\downarrow$	5-7
REF LVL STEP	5-9
Enhanced Versatility	5-10
RES BW	
$\uparrow\downarrow$	5-10
AUTO	5-13
VID FLTR	5-13
VERT SCALE	
10/5/1	5-15
LIN	5-16
SWEEP	
$\uparrow\downarrow$	5-16
AUTO	5-18
SINGLE	5-19
LEVEL	5-20
DISPLAY STORAGE	
A B C D (Turning registers on and off)	5-21
Analog Display	5-22
SAVE ENABLE A B C	5-23
Register Priority	5-24
SAVE ENABLE D (Waterfall mode)	5-25
MAX HOLD A & B	5-27
FREQ/MKRS	
MKR/D/OFF	5-28
CTR-MEAS/TRKG	5-31
MKR \leftrightarrow	5-34
PEAK FIND	5-35
Miscellaneous Controls	
PLOT	5-35
READOUT	5-36
INTENSITY	5-37
TRACE ROT, VERT POS, HORIZ POS	5-38

Section 6 – Software Control - The Menus

INPUT	6-5
Turning the Calibrator On and Off	6-5
Setting the RF Attenuation	6-6
Changing Reference Level Units	6-7
Accommodating External	
Amplification/Attenuation	6-7
Accommodating a 75 Ohm Source	6-8
Setting the First Mixer Input Level	6-11
Turning the Preamplifier On and Off	6-12
Using the dBV/M	6-13
MKR/FREQ	6-22
Setting the Start and Stop Frequencies	6-22
Using Markers to Set Start and Stop Frequencies	6-22
Transposing Markers	6-23
Changing the Knob Function	6-24
Moving the Marker to the	
Next Higher or Lower Peak	6-26
Marker to the Reference Level	6-26
Selecting the Tuning Increment	6-27
Center or Start Frequency	6-28
Setting the Signal Threshold	6-28
Counter Resolution (Option 02 Only)	6-29
Programmed Tuning	6-30
Tabular Tuning	6-32
Frequency Offsets	6-33
DSPL	6-34
Changing Display Mode	6-35
Ensemble Averaging	6-36
Subtracting Stored Signals	6-40
Changing Acquisition Mode	6-44
Adding Titles and Labels	6-45
Turning the Graticule On and Off	6-47
Displaying an External Source	6-48
The Display Line and Limit Detector	6-48
Activating Minimum Hold	6-50
APPL	6-51
Measuring Signal Bandwidths	6-52
Measuring Average Noise	6-53
Measuring Carrier-To-Noise Ratios	6-55
Searching for Signals	6-57
Measuring Occupied Bandwidths (OBW)	6-59
Viewing Instantaneous Frequency Deviation	6-63

DEMOD/TG	6-65
Listening to FM Transmissions	6-65
Listening to AM Transmissions	6-66
Listening to FM or AM Transmissions	6-66
Video Demodulation (Option 10 only)	6-67
Using the Tracking Generator (Option 04 only)	6-69
Turning the Tracking Generator On and Off	6-71
Normalizing the Tracking Generator	6-71
Setting the Tracking Generator Amplitude	6-73
Adjusting the Tracking	6-74
Using External	
Amplification/Attenuation With the TG	6-76
A Practical Example	6-78
UTIL	6-79
Menu-Entered Control Settings	6-79
Saving and Recalling Settings and Displays	6-81
Recalling Last Power-Down Settings	6-81
User-Defined Power-Up Settings	6-82
Other User-Defined Settings	6-83
Normalizing the 2711	6-85
System Configuration	6-87
Configuring the Communications Port	
(Option 03 or 08 Only)	6-88
GPIB Configuration	6-88
RS-232 Configuration	6-90
Selecting the Screen Plotter Configuration	6-91
Selecting the Printer Configuration	6-92
Instrument Configuration	6-93
The Audio Alert	6-93
Setting the Minimum Signal Size	6-94
Sending Waveforms to a Computer	6-94
Turning Frequency Corrections On and Off	6-94
The Spectral Display in Menus	6-95
Changing the Sweep Holdoff	6-96
Setting the Date and Time (Option 03 and 08 Only)	6-96
Protecting Stored Settings	6-97
The 2711 File System	6-97
Protecting Files	6-99
Confirming Installed Options	6-99
Instrument Diagnostics and Adjustments	6-100
Aligning the Display with the Screen	6-101

Service Normalizations	6-101
If You Lose NVRAM	6-103
Generating a Service Request (Options 03 and 08 Only)	6-104
Printing the On-screen Readouts (Option 08 Only)	6-105
SWP/TRIG	6-106
Free Running the Sweep Generator	6-106
Oscilloscope Trigger Modes	6-106
TV Line Triggering	6-109
TV Video Field Triggering	6-112
Setting the Sweep Rate	6-112
Manually Scanning	6-112
USER DEF	6-113
 Section 7 – External Input and Output	
Mains Power	7-1
J101 -- TV Sideband Adapter Interface	7-1
J102 -- External Trigger	7-2
J103 -- Accessory Connector	7-3
Pin 1 -- External Video Input	7-3
Pin 2 -- Chassis and Signal Ground	7-5
Pin 3 -- Video Output	7-5
Pin 6 -- Sweep Gate	7-5
Pin 7 -- Sweep Ramp	7-7
J104 -- Digital Communications Port	7-8
 Appendix A – Broadcast AM, FM, and TV Signal Sources	
A-1	
 Appendix B – System Messages	
B-1	
 Appendix C – Global Resets	
C-1	
 Appendix D – Accessories and Options	
D-1	
 Index	
I-1	

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

Figure 1-1. Spectrum analyzer block diagram.	1-8
Figure 3-1. 2711 display with factory power-up settings.	3-8
Figure 3-2. Normal on-screen data readouts.	3-9
Figure 3-3. The 2711's primary controls.	3-15
Figure 3-4. 100 MHz calibration signal and harmonics.	3-16
Figure 3-5. Calibration signal fundamental.	3-20
Figure 4-1. Layout of the text screen in spectral display mode.	4-2
Figure 4-2. Layout of the text screen in menu display mode.	4-2
Figure 4-3. The frequency/marker function block.	4-4
Figure 4-4. Fundamental controls.	4-6
Figure 4-5. The KEYPAD.	4-8
Figure 4-6. Display register control.	4-9
Figure 4-7. Vertical scale, demodulator, TG, and display controls.	4-10
Figure 4-8. Resolution BW and sweep controls, and RF INPUT.	4-12
Figure 4-9. The back panel.	4-14
Figure 5-1. Example of a waterfall display.	5-26
Figure 6-1. The Input Menu.	6-2
Figure 6-2. Reference Level Units Menu.	6-3
Figure 6-3. Sweep/Trigger Menu with SWEEP RATE selection chosen.	6-3
Figure 6-4. 75/50 ohm matching minimum loss pad.	6-11
Figure 6-5. Equipment setup for field strength measurements.	6-15
Figure 6-6. Average signal plus noise and average signal-plus-noise subtracted from the current sweep.	6-41
Figure 6-7. Average MEAN noise and MAX HOLD signal-plus-noise spectra.	6-42
Figure 6-8. B, C MINUS A OFFSET TO CENTER.	6-43
Figure 6-9. B, C MINUS A OFFSET TO TOP.	6-43
Figure 6-10. 2711 plot with title and plot labels.	6-47
Figure 6-11. The SIGNAL SEARCH frequency range.	6-58

Figure 6-12. Illustration of Occupied BW measurement.	6-60
Figure 6-13. Portion of U.S. broadcast FM band.	6-61
Figure 6-14. OCCUPIED BW mode with MAX HOLD.	6-62
Figure 6-15.. Instantaneous frequency deviation and maximum observed deviation.	6-64
Figure 6-16. 2711 screen in video monitor mode.	6-68
Figure 6-17. Equipment setup for tracking generator measurement of 50 Ω devices.	6-70
Figure 6-18. Bandpass filter response using the 2711 optional tracking generator and B,C MINUS A mode.	6-78
Figure 6-19. Video field using Internal or TV field triggering.	6-108
Figure 6-20. Video signal using continuous horizontal line triggering.	6-110
Figure 6-21. Video signal using knob-selectable horizontal line triggering (VITS visible).	6-111
Figure 7-1. Accessory connector (J103).	7-3
Figure 7-2. Sweep gate and ramp timing.	7-6
Figure 7-3. IEEE Standard 488 (GPIB) connector pin assignments.	7-8
Figure 7-4. EIA Standard RS-232 (C) connector pin assignments.	7-9

LIST OF TABLES

Table of safe maximum signal levels.	xi
Table 2-1. Frequency related characteristics.	2-2
Table 2-2. Frequency/amplitude related characteristics.	2-4
Table 2-3. Amplitude related characteristics.	2-5
Table 2-4. Input/output signal characteristics.	2-7
Table 2-5. Power requirements.	2-9
Table 2-6. General characteristics.	2-10
Table 2-7. Supplementary characteristics due to options	2-11
Table 2-8. Environmental characteristics.	2-13
Table 2-9. Physical characteristics.	2-14
Table 4-1. The Sweep/Trigger (SWP/TRIG) Menu.	4-15
Table 4-2. The Utility (UTIL) Menu.	4-16
Table 4-3. The Marker/Frequency (MKR/FREQ) Menu.	4-20
Table 4-4. The Applications (APPL) Menu.	4-22
Table 4-5. The Demodulator/Tracking Generator (DEMOD/TG) Menu.	4-23
Table 4-6. The Display (DSPL) Menu.	4-24
Table 4-7. User Definable (USER DEF) Menu.	4-26
Table 4-8. The Input (INPUT) Menu.	4-27
Table 6-1. Equivalent decibel - voltage values.	6-17
Table 6-2. The 2711 file system.	6-98
Table D-1. Standard accessories.	D-1
Table D-2. Optional power cords.	D-1
Table D-3. Optional accessories.	D-2

OPERATORS SAFETY SUMMARY

The safety information in this part of the manual is for operating personnel. Specific warnings and cautions may also be found throughout the manual where they apply.

TERMS IN THIS MANUAL



This symbol identifies conditions or practices that could result in damage to the equipment or other property.

WARNING

This symbol identifies conditions or practices that could result in personal injury or loss of life.

TERMS MARKED ON EQUIPMENT

CAUTION indicates a personal injury hazard not immediately accessible as one reads the markings, or a hazard to property, including the equipment itself.

DANGER indicates a personal injury hazard immediately accessible as one reads the marking.



means "Caution, refer to the manual for additional information".

AC POWER SOURCE



To prevent damage to the Spectrum Analyzer, operate it only from appropriate AC mains sources.

Damage to the instrument can occur if the 50-60 Hertz AC power source applies more than 250 VAC rms between conductors, or between either conductor and ground. See Table 2-5 in the *Specifications* section for additional information.

DC POWER SOURCE

The 2711 Spectrum Analyzer can be powered from the optional model 2704/2705 DC-to-AC Inverter and external DC battery pack. The Analyzer will run for about one hour on a fully charged 2705 Battery Pack, and for extended periods of time on alternate DC sources. See the *2704 DC-to-AC Inverter and 2705 Battery Pack* instruction manual for further information.

PRODUCT GROUNDING

WARNING

To prevent potentially hazardous voltages from existing on the exposed metal parts of the 2711, always use the Analyzer's protective ground.

The 2711 is connected to earth ground via the protective grounding lead of its AC power cord. Upon loss of the protective ground connection, all accessible conductive parts of the analyzer can render an electric shock.

INPUT POWER AND VOLTAGE LIMITATIONS



The safe maximum total RF input power for the 2711 Spectrum Analyzer is +20 dBm (+67 dBmV). DC input voltage is limited to 100 VDC maximum.

Total input power above the rated maximum can cause damage to the instrument, and voids the factory warranty. For a number of equal amplitude signals, the total power is approximately:

$$\begin{array}{l} \text{Total} \\ \text{Signal} \\ \text{(dBm)} \end{array} = \begin{array}{l} \text{Single} \\ \text{Signal} \\ \text{(dBm)} \end{array} + 10 \log (\text{Number of Signals})$$

Thus, the safe maximum amplitude per signal is given below:

Table of safe maximum signal levels.

Number of Signals Input to Analyzer	Safe Maximum Amplitude per Signal (dBm)
1	+20.0
10	+10.0
30	+5.2
50	+3.0
70	+1.5
100	0.0

Remember, two +18 dBm signals total more than +20 dBm! Higher signal levels should be externally attenuated.



To avoid overloading the analyzer and possibly damaging it, do not place AC or DC power supply voltages on the input of the Spectrum Analyzer.

USE THE PROPER FUSE

For continued fire protection, observe the fuse specifications located on the back panel of the Spectrum Analyzer.

GENERAL PRECAUTIONS

WARNING

Using the 2711 Spectrum Analyzer in wet/damp conditions or inclement weather may result in electric shock or damage to the instrument.

Always allow at least 2" clearance adjacent to the ventilation holes at the sides, bottom, and back of the Analyzer case.

The 2711 can be damaged by incorrect AC supply voltages, RF inputs that exceed the maximum ratings, operation in very high temperatures or without adequate ventilation, immersion in liquids, and physical abuse.

To avoid explosion, do not operate this product in explosive atmospheres unless it has been specifically certified for such operation.

To avoid personal injury, do not remove covers or panels, or operate the analyzer without the protective covers installed.

To avoid the possibility of overheating, do not operate the Spectrum Analyzer in a carrying case.

Refer internal service and adjustment to qualified service personnel.

Section 1 — Introduction

Replace this page with the tab divider of the same name.

SECTION 1

INTRODUCTION

This section describes the manual you are reading, and introduces you to the basic concepts behind RF spectrum analyzers, and the 2711 Spectrum Analyzer in particular.

MANUAL ORGANIZATION

The manual is divided into three parts. The first part (sections 1 through 4) contains reference material that enables the beginning or experienced operator to safely power up and initially normalize the 2711.

The second part of the manual consists of sections 5 through 7. These provide detailed explanations of controls and menus, and some measurement examples which may be especially useful to the novice user. Read these sections interactively, and carry out the instructions using the spectrum analyzer. In this way you quickly acquire the knowledge and skills necessary to confidently make accurate measurements.

Part three of the manual consists of several appendices and an Index. The appendices contain information about a number of topics useful, but not essential, to operating the 2711.

The experienced operator may find that sections 2 and 4, ***Specifications*** and ***Operation Summary***, provide most of the information needed for routine operations. However, a newcomer to spectrum analysis, may find the material in sections 1 and 3, ***Introduction and Getting Acquainted With Your Instrument***, especially helpful. Section 1 contains a brief description of spectrum analysis and reviews the characteristics of the Tektronix 2711 Spectrum Analyzer. Section 3 enables you to safely apply power and signals to the 2711. You become acquainted with the fundamental controls of the instrument and make your first measurement using the built-in calibration signal. For additional information, we recommend that you also read Tektronix application note 26W-7037-1, ***Spectrum Analyzer Fundamentals***.

The second part of the manual is divided into small lessons. The end of one lesson and start of the next are indicated by a "settings box" that looks like this:

100.0MHZ	(AUTO SWEEP)	ATTN 10DB
-20.0DBM		VF WIDE
20.0MHZ/		10 DB/
5MHZ RBW (AUTO)		

The box shows what the control settings of the Spectrum Analyzer should be to continue with the lesson which follows it. The contents of the box resemble the analyzer's standard on-screen data readouts. Each lesson begins with the sweep and resolution bandwidth controls in AUTO mode. To remind you of this, (AUTO SWEEP) is shown in the top center of the box and (AUTO) follows the resolution bandwidth setting. The parentheses mean the enclosed item is not part of the normal on-screen readouts.

If you are inexperienced with spectrum analyzers, we recommend that you proceed serially through the second part of the manual. Although each section can stand alone, they have been written to acquaint you with the most important features of the analyzer first, and to yield increased experience with previously-discussed controls as you proceed through the more advanced portions.

Sections 5 and 6, **Dedicated Controls** and **Software Controls - The Menus**, explain – with the help of examples you carry out – the features of the 2711, and the benefits you gain from each control and menu option. You learn to easily obtain accurate spectral and time-domain measurements.

Section 7, **External Input and Output**, teaches you how to get signals in and out of the back panel of your spectrum analyzer. If you are already familiar with the 2711, this manual can serve as a "how to" reference. Check the index or table of contents for the location of the subject of interest. Then set the analyzer according to the corresponding settings box, and refresh your memory by carrying out the example following the box.

TYPOGRAPHICAL CONVENTIONS

A few typographical conventions are used to make this manual more convenient to use. Text consists of information and instructions. Instructions are printed in **bold type** to distinguish them from purely informational statements. For example, the instruction:

**"Change the center frequency by turning the
FREQ/MARKERS knob."**

is distinguished from the informational statement:

**"Turning the FREQ/MARKERS knob changes the
frequency."**

by the **bold text**.

Textual information that appears on the spectrum analyzer screen, such as the data in the readout areas, is printed as it appears on screen in **CAPITALIZED, BOLD PRINT**. For instance, the span per division and resolution bandwidth appear in the upper left of the screen in this format:

**20.0 MHZ/
3 KHZ RBW**

The keys on the Spectrum Analyzer are usually represented by square brackets enclosing the name of the key. The names are printed in **CAPITALIZED, BOLD PRINT** as they appear on the spectrum analyzer front panel, except that names occupying more than one line on the analyzer are printed on a single line. For instance, if we tell you to **press**:

[REF LVL STEP]

we mean **Press the key (in the top center function block of the control panel) that looks like:**

**REF LVL
STEP**



Notice that on the analyzer, the key names may be printed on the key or directly above the key.

When we want you to press a series of keys, we print the series in sequence. For instance, if we tell you to **press**:

[UTIL] [1] [1]

we mean sequentially press the UTIL key, the 1 key, and the 1 key a second time.

When selection of an item from a menu is required, the item number, its description as it appears on the menu, or both are given. For instance, soon you will select item 9 from the Input Menu. This is how the description of item 9 appears on the menu and in text:

CAL SIG @ 100MHZ -30DBM

Text which refers to the title of another section of this manual, or of another publication, is printed in ***bold Italics***. For instance, we might suggest that you:

"...see the *Operation Summary* section for..."

If another publication is referenced, its complete title and Tektronix publication number are supplied.

WHAT IS A SPECTRUM ANALYZER?

There are several types of spectrum analyzers, but we will describe only the *heterodyne* or *scanning* analyzer. A scanning RF spectrum analyzer is essentially a radio receiver. Imagine tuning a conventional FM broadcast receiver from one end of the band to the other. As you tune, plot the reading of the signal level meter versus frequency. The graph you produce is a *frequency domain* representation, or *spectrum*, of the FM broadcast band; it tells you at which frequencies the signals occur and how strong they are. If stations are too close together, you will hear them simultaneously and you will not be able to get an independent meter reading for each. This is because the intermediate frequency (IF) filter of the receiver has a bandwidth too wide to *resolve*, or separate, the stations.

In this thought-experiment, you are manually tuning, or scanning, the FM broadcast band with a *resolution bandwidth* equal to the bandwidth of the IF filter in your receiver. Suppose you plot your measurements on graph paper with one centimeter divisions, so that each division equals one megahertz. The *span/division* of the resulting plot is then 1 MHz/division.

If you stop tuning, the receiver no longer spans a range of frequencies, but is fixed at the currently selected frequency; it is in *zero span* mode. The output of the receiver depends on the signal coming through the IF filter at the selected frequency. After detection, the sound you hear is proportional to the modulating signal amplitude. If you plot the amplitude of the signal as a function of time (or view it on an oscilloscope-type display) you create a *time-domain* representation (signal amplitude vs. time).

A spectrum analyzer performs similarly except that the scan is usually performed automatically (and faster than you do it manually) and there is a selection of IF bandwidths, or resolution bandwidths, to choose from. Multiple resolution BWs are needed because in some cases you want to separate closely-spaced, narrow-band signals, while in others you will want to examine signals with larger bandwidths. There is a maximum speed at which a band can be accurately scanned with a resolution BW of a given width; generally the smaller the resolution BW, the slower the speed. The 2711 can automatically select the fastest speed for you.

You can find additional information about basic spectrum analyzer concepts and definitions in Tektronix application note 26W-7037-1, *Spectrum Analyzer Fundamentals*.

WHAT CAN YOU DO WITH A SPECTRUM ANALYZER?

Spectrum analyzers measure how the power in an input signal is distributed in frequency. Therefore, you can use them to determine signal amplitudes and frequencies, noise power, carrier-to-noise (C/N) ratios, signal or filter bandwidths, distortion (harmonic and intermodulation), FM deviation, percent modulation, detect spurious signals, align transmitters and receivers, check specifications, and so forth.

ABOUT THE 2711

The Tektronix 2711 is a portable, radio frequency (RF) scanning spectrum analyzer designed for use in the field as well as the shop. It is light weight (less than 9.5 kg/22 lbs) and can be equipped with a battery and inverter for use in locations without AC power. The instrument is very durable, but rough handling, or contaminants such as liquids or dust inside the case, can cause damage. The optional Travel Line package provides additional protection during transportation.

The 2711's user interface is simple enough for the beginner but versatile enough to satisfy an expert. Fundamental measurement parameters (center frequency, span/division, reference level, etc.) can be controlled directly with dedicated keys. In fact, as you will learn in section 3, a spectrum may be displayed by touching only three controls. Convenient call-up menus enable you to automate certain operations, such as bandwidth or carrier-to-noise ratio measurements, and to directly enter front-panel control settings. Measurement parameters and results are displayed on-screen.

To increase measurement flexibility, the 2711 has a broad range of standard features. Input signal sensitivity with the built-in preamp activated can be as low as -127 dBm, and signals as large as $+20$ dBm can be accommodated. A frequency-corrected oscillator provides accuracy of 1×10^{-5} of center frequency ± 5 kHz ± 1 Least Significant Digit. AUTO operation allows both sweep speed and

resolution bandwidth to be selected automatically. Digital and analog displays are standard, as are time-domain functions (with 1 μ s/div sweep speed in analog mode), AM/FM detection, built-in preamplifier, user-definable modes, and 3 kHz to 5 MHz resolution BWs.

Post-detection digital sampling (at a 2.5 MHz conversion rate) and storage is used with a unique max/min display mode that provides a close approximation of analog displays. Peak detection is also provided. It is possible to display up to four traces simultaneously and to perform ensemble statistics. A continuously updated "waterfall" display mode can be used to compare the four most recent spectral sweeps. Optional GPIB (Option 03) and RS-232 (Option 08) ports are available. Non-volatile random access memory (NVRAM) enables you to save up to 36 front-panel configurations and a number of spectral sweeps — 28 kbyte of NVRAM is provided, with an additional 96 kbytes added when Options 03 or 08 are installed. The exact storage capability depends on what else you are storing in the instrument (such as user-defined keystroke sequences).

Optional capabilities result in even greater performance.

Option 02: Built-In frequency counter for increased frequency measurement precision.

Option 04 : Built-in tracking generator for swept frequency measurements.

Option 10: Video monitor for broadcast or satellite TV reception.

Figure 1-1 illustrates how the 2711 is put together. As you proceed through this manual, you may find it useful to refer to this block diagram to understand how the various features of the analyzer operate.

NOTE

Because Tektronix continually improves its products, it is possible there may be a few differences in how your Spectrum Analyzer operates compared to the description in this document. Check with Tektronix if further information is needed.

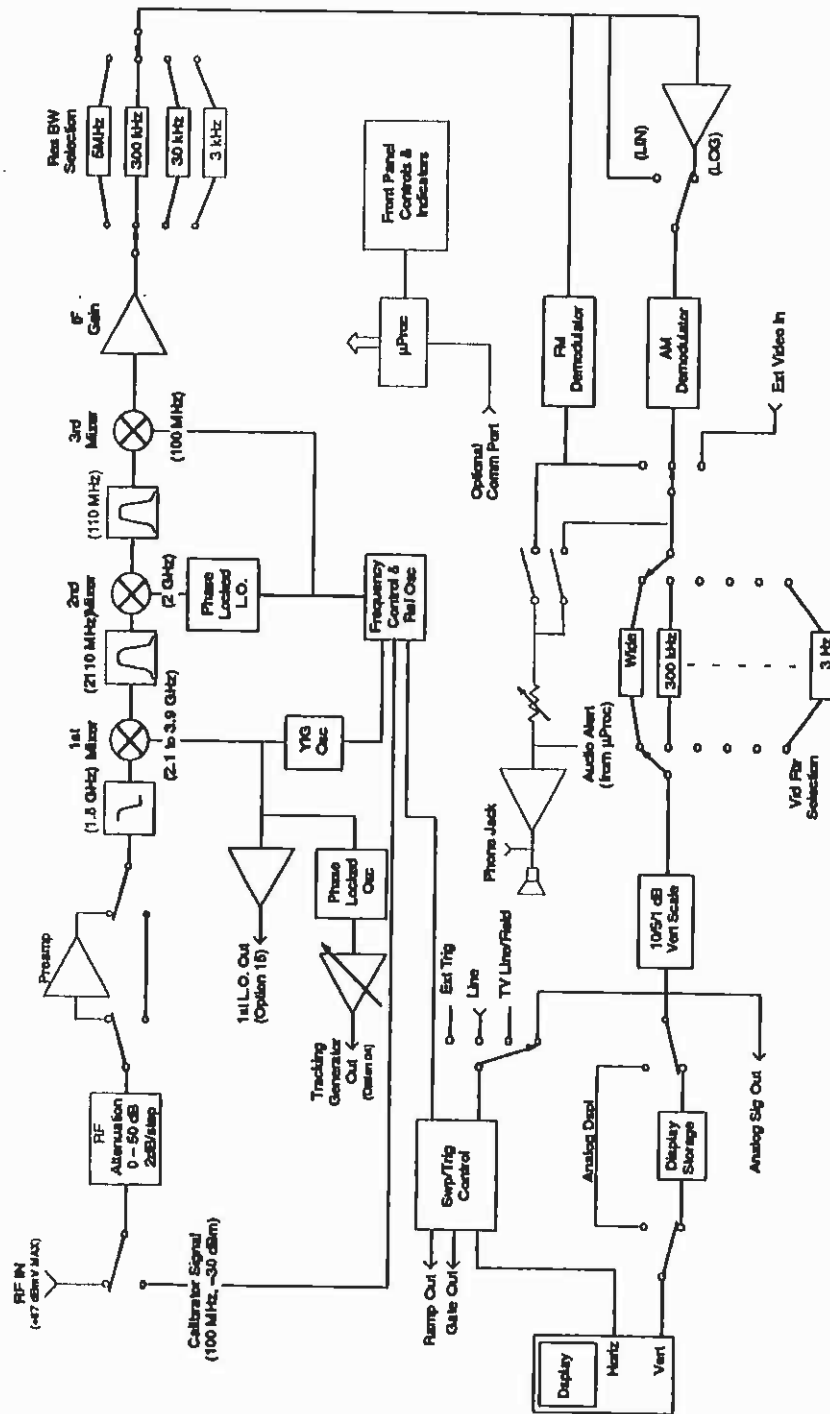


Figure 1-1. Spectrum analyzer block diagram.

Section 2 — Specifications

Replace this page with the tab divider of the same name.

SECTION 2

SPECIFICATIONS

INTRODUCTION

This section lists the electrical, physical, and environmental characteristics of the 2711 Spectrum Analyzer, specifies the performance requirements for those characteristics, and provides other supplementary information. Changes to a characteristic because of the addition of an option are included in the characteristic's specification.

ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS

Unless otherwise stated, the following tables of electrical characteristics and features apply to the 2711 Spectrum Analyzer after a 15 minute warm-up period (within the environmental limits) and after all normalization procedures have been carried out.

Information in the Performance Requirement column is guaranteed and verifiable. Supplemental information is intended to further explain a characteristic, its performance requirement, or to describe characteristic performance that is impractical to verify. Supplemental information is not guaranteed and may not be supported by a performance check procedure.

Table 2-1. Frequency related characteristics.

Characteristic	Performance Requirement	Supplemental Information
Frequency Range	9 kHz to 1.8 GHz	Tuned by the FREQ/MKRS knob, FREQUENCY arrow keys, or set via the front panel keypad or Utility Menu.
Accuracy	1×10^{-5} of center frequency $\pm 5 \text{ kHz} \pm 1$ Least Significant Digit	Assume zero drift since last normalization procedure.
Long Term Drift		$\pm 10 \text{ PPM/year}$.
Short Term Drift	$\leq 20 \text{ kHz}$	With frequency corrections enabled.
Readout Resolution		$\leq 1\%$ of the selected span/div to 100 Hz.
Frequency Span/Div Range		From 100 MHz/div to 10 kHz/div in a 1-2-5 sequence, with the SPAN/DIV arrow keys, or set to arbitrary value via front-panel keypad or the Utility Menu; also 180 MHz/div in MAX SPAN and 0 Hz for ZERO SPAN.
Accuracy/Linearity	Within 3%	Measured over the center 8 divisions.
Flatness (About the Midpoint Between Two Extremes)	$\pm 1.5 \text{ dB}$	<p>Measured with 10 dB of RF Attenuation.</p> <p>Flatness is affected by:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Input VSWR. • Gain variation. • Mixer conversion.

Table 2-1. (Continued).

Characteristic	Performance Requirement	Supplemental Information
Residual FM	≤ 2 kHz peak-to-peak total excursion in 20 ms	Short term, after 1 hour warm-up.
Resolution Bandwidth Filter Bandwidths Measured 6 dB Down		Selections are 5 MHz, 300 kHz, 30 kHz, and 3 kHz.
Shape Factor (60 dB/6 dB)	7:1 or less for all resolution BWs ≤ 1 MHz	
Noise Sidebands	≥ -70 dBc at 30 times resolution BW for all bandwidths ≤ 100 kHz	
Video Filter		<p>Reduces video bandwidth to approximately 1/100 of the selected resolution bandwidth in AUTO.</p> <p>One of twelve filters can also be manually selected via the Utility Menu: 3 Hz, 10 Hz, 30 Hz, 100 Hz, 300 Hz, 1 kHz, 3 kHz, 10 kHz, 30 kHz, 100 kHz, 300 kHz, and WIDE.</p>

Table 2-2. Frequency/amplitude related characteristics.

Characteristic	Performance Requirement	Supplemental Information
Marker		Marker frequency & amplitude readouts displayed on screen preceded by "M". Use the FREQ/MKRS knob or the MKR \leftrightarrow keys to position the marker to any point on a digital sweep. Signal must be above threshold.
Accuracy Frequency		Same as Span/Div.
Amplitude		Function of reference level, vertical scale, and normalizations. See display dynamic range in Table 2-3.
Delta Marker	When activated, a 2nd marker is displayed at the same frequency as the first marker. This is the "Reference Marker."	Frequency and amplitude differences between markers are read out on screen preceded by "D". The FREQ/ MKRS knob or the MKR \leftrightarrow keys position the moveable marker.
Accuracy Frequency		Same as Span/Div.
Amplitude		Same as marker.
Center Measure		When activated, the signal nearest center screen (or with marker on, nearest the marker) and above a preset threshold level, is moved to center screen. The Option 02 displays frequency and amplitude values, preceded by the letter "C".
Readout Resolution	10% of Span/Div to 1 kHz	Resolution is selectable.

Table 2-2. (Continued).

Characteristic	Performance Requirement	Supplemental Information
Signal Track		When activated, continuously repeats the Center Measure function to hold a signal at center screen. Signal must be above threshold. If the signal decreases below the threshold, the instrument enters idle mode.

Table 2-3. Amplitude related characteristics.

Characteristic	Performance Requirement	Supplemental Information
Vertical Display Mode		10 dB/Div, 5 dB/Div, 1 dB/Div, and Linear.
Reference Level		Top graticule line.
Range Log Mode		-70 dBm to +20 dBm. -23 dBmV to +66.9 dBmV.
Linear Mode		8.84 μ V/div to 280 mV/Div.
Step Size Log Mode		1 dB or 10 dB.
Linear Mode (Coarse Steps)		1-2-5 sequence: 10 μ V/Div to 280 mV/Div.
Linear (Fine Steps)		≥ 0.2 divisions per step.
Accuracy		Dependent upon calibrator accuracy, normalization, and frequency response.
Display Dynamic Range	80 dB maximum Log mode 8 divisions Linear mode	Measurements made within 5 dB of the noise floor are not specified for accuracy.

Table 2-3. (Continued).

Characteristic	Performance Requirement		Supplemental Information
Display Dynamic Range (Continued)			
Accuracy			
10 dB/Div Mode	±1.0 dB/10 dB to a maximum cumulative error of ±2.0 dB over 70 dB range, and ±4.0 dB cumulative over 80 dB range		
5 dB/Div Mode	±1.0 dB/10 dB to a maximum cumulative error of ±2.0 dB over 40 dB range		
1 dB/Div Mode	±1.0 dB/10 dB maximum over the 8 dB range		
Linear Mode	±5% of full scale		
RF Attenuator Range			0 to 50 dB in 2 dB steps.
Sensitivity Without Preamp			Equivalent maximum input noise for each resolution bandwidth.
Resolution BW	100 MHz	1.8 GHz	Decrease in sensitivity is approximately linear from 100 MHz to 1.8 GHz.
5 MHz	-85 dBm	-77 dBm	
300 kHz	-97 dBm	-89 dBm	
30 kHz	-107 dBm	-99 dBm	
3 kHz	-117 dBm	-109 dBm	
Sensitivity With Preamp			Start spur results in maximum 20 dB sensitivity loss from 10 MHz to 9 kHz.
5 MHz	-97 dBm		Sensitivity with preamp is not specified above 600 MHz.
300 kHz	-109 dBm		
30 kHz	-119 dBm		
3 kHz	-129 dBm		

Table 2-3. (Continued).

Characteristic	Performance Requirement	Supplemental Information
Spurious Responses Residual (No Input)	≤ -100 dBm except at 1780 MHz, where the residual is -90 dBm or less	With no RF Attenuation.
3rd Order Intermodulation Products	≤ -70 dBc	From any two on-screen signals within any frequency span.
Zero Frequency (0 Hz)	≤ -10 dBm	Referenced to input with 0 dB RF Attenuation.
2nd Harmonic Distortion	≤ -66 dBm	Measured with 1st mixer input level of ≤ -40 dB.
LO Emission	≤ -70 dBm	With 0 dB RF Attenuation.

Table 2-4. Input/output signal characteristics.

Characteristic	Performance Requirement	Supplemental Information
RF Input		Type N 50 Ω female connector.
VSWR (RF atten ≥ 10 dB)	1.5:1 maximum	
VSWR (0 dB RF atten)	3.0:1 maximum	
Maximum Safe Input		+20 dBm (0.1 W or 2.2 V) and 100 VDC continuous. DO NOT EXCEED MAXIMUM RATINGS.
1 dB Compression Point	-15 dBm minimum at first mixer input	First mixer optimum input level must be set to -30 dBm (INPUT) (4).

Table 2-4. (Continued).

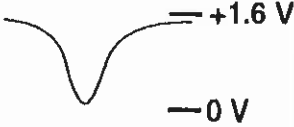

Characteristic	Performance Requirement	Supplemental Information
EXT TRIG (J102)		BNC connector, 10 k Ω impedance, DC coupled for external trigger signals.
Voltage Range Minimum		Typically 100 mV, 15 Hz to 1 MHz.
Maximum		50 V (DC + peak AC).
Pulse Width		0.1 μ s minimum.
ACCESSORY CONNECTOR (J103)		DB-9 female connector.
Pin 1: External Video Input		Typically 100 Ω , DC coupled 0-1.6V (200mV/Div), input signal for vertical deflection of the CRT beam. Signal is processed by the digital storage circuits (which can be turned off) and the 1, 5, and 10 dB scale factor circuits. Also used as the Model 1405 marker input.
Pin 2: Chassis and Signal Ground		
Pin 3: Video Output		Provides 0 V to +1.6 V of video signal, inversely proportional to the vertical display amplitude. 0 V is the top of the screen. Impedance is 1 k Ω .
Pin 6: Sweep Gate		TTL-compatible signal that goes to a logic high level while the CRT beam is sweeping.

Table 2-4. (Continued).


Characteristic	Performance Requirement	Supplemental Information
Pin 7: Sweep Output		Provides nominal +1.3 V to -1.3 V negative-going ramp, proportional to the horizontal sweep (output impedance $\leq 50 \Omega$).
Pins 4, 5, 8, and 9		Reserved for future programming options.

Table 2-5. Power requirements.

Characteristic	Performance Requirement	Supplemental Information
Input Voltage		
Line Voltage Range	90 V _{AC} to 250 V _{AC}	
Line Frequency Range	48 Hz to 63 Hz	
Line Voltage Range	90 V _{AC} to 132 V _{AC}	
Line Frequency Range	48 Hz to 440 Hz	
Line Fuse	2A Slow-Blow	
Input Power	90 W (1.2 A) for standard instrument 105 W (1.4 A) maximum with options (115 W maximum at 90 V and 440 Hz)	At 115 V and 60 Hz.
Leakage Current		3.5 mA maximum or 5 mA peak maximum.

Table 2-6. General characteristics.

Characteristic	Performance Requirement	Supplemental Information
Sweep Sweep Rate	1 μ s to 2 s/Div in a 1-2-5 sequence	Normal, Single Sweep, and Manual Scan.
Accuracy	$\pm 10\%$ over the center 8 divisions	
Triggering Internal Trigger Level	1 division or more of signal	Free Run, Internal, External, Line, TV Line, and TV Field.
External Trigger Level		See EXT TRIG (J102) in Table 2-4.
Non-Volatile Memory (Battery-Backed Up)		Instrument settings, waveforms, and Normalization results are stored in non-volatile RAM.
Battery Life At +55°C Ambient Temperature		1 to 2 years.
At +25°C Ambient Temperature		At least 5 years.
Temperature Range for Retaining Data		-10°C to +75°C.
Internal Calibrator Amplitude and Accuracy	-30 dBm ± 0.3 dB at 100 MHz ± 5 kHz	Provides 100 MHz marker for amplitude calibration and comb of 100 MHz markers for frequency and span calibration.
Drift	± 10 PPM/Year	

WARNING

Handling and disposing of lithium cells can be hazardous. Refer all battery maintenance to a Tektronix service center.

Table 2-7. Supplementary characteristics due to options.

Characteristic	Performance Requirement	Supplemental Information
Option 02		Adds frequency counter.
Frequency Accuracy (Counter) (Spans ≤ 10 MHz/Div)	$CF \times 10^{-5} \pm 10 \text{ Hz} \pm 1 \text{ LSD}$	Assume zero drift since last normalization procedure.
Readout Resolution		1 Hz or 1 kHz, menu selectable.
Frequency Drift		10 PPM/Year.
Delta Marker Frequency Accuracy	$2(CF \times 10^{-5} \pm 10 \text{ Hz} \pm 1 \text{ LSD})$	
Option 03		24-pin connector; conforms to IEEE Standard 488.1 - 1978.
Option 04		Adds tracking generator.
Frequency Range	100 kHz to 1.8 GHz	Tracks the Spectrum Analyzer input.
TG TRACKING (Offset)	Sufficient to align Tracking Generator to Spectrum Analyzer window	Auto Frequency correction for centering into Spectrum Analyzer window, typically -5 kHz to $+60 \text{ kHz}$.
Output Level Range	-48 dBm to 0 dBm	0.1 dB steps.
Accuracy	$\pm 1.5 \text{ dB}$	At 100 MHz.
Output Impedance		50Ω nominal.
VSWR	2:1 or better with output level $\leq -8 \text{ dBm}$	

Table 2-7. (Continued).

Characteristic	Performance Requirement	Supplemental Information
Option 04 (Continued) Flatness Tracking Generator	± 1 dB from 100 kHz to 1.0 GHz and ± 1.5 dB to 1.8 GHz	Typically ± 1 dB to 1.8 GHz.
System *	± 2.5 dB from 100 kHz to 1.0 GHz and ± 3 dB to 1.8 GHz	With 10 dB of attenuation in the Spectrum Analyzer.
User-Corrected	± 0.2 dB	Using B, C – SAVE A Flatness feature.
System Dynamic Range	≥ 100 dB	Sensitivity ≥ -100 dBm.
System Residual FM		≤ 100 Hz p-p total excursion in 20 ms.
Spurious Signals Harmonic	-20 dBc or better with respect to the fundamental	At frequencies ≥ 100 kHz.
Non-Harmonic	-35 dBc or better with respect to the fundamental	
Option 08		Provides RS-232 serial interface port (J103). Excludes Option 03.
Option 10		Adds Video Monitor capability.
Option 15		Adds rear-panel 1st LO output.
1st LO Output Level	≥ 0 dBm	

*System = Tracking Generator and Spectrum Analyzer combination.

ENVIRONMENTAL CHARACTERISTICS

The environmental characteristics of the 2711 Spectrum Analyzer are listed below. A brief description of each characteristic and how it was obtained is provided. The 2711 meets MIL T-28800E, type III, class 5, style C specifications.

Table 2-8. Environmental characteristics.

Characteristic	Description
Temperature Operating and Humidity	0°C to +50°C MIL T-28800E 5 cycles (120 hours).
Non-operating *	-55°C ^b to +75°C.
Altitude Operating	15,000 feet.
Non-operating	50,000 feet.
Humidity (Non-operating)	Five cycles (120 hours) in accordance with MIL-Std-28800E, class 5.
Vibration Operating (Instrument secured to a vibration platform during test)	MIL-Std-28800E, Method 514 Procedure X (modified). 15 minutes along each of 3 major axes at a total displacement of 0.015 inch peak-to-peak (2.4 g at 55 Hz), with frequency varied from 10 Hz to 55 Hz in 1-minute sweeps. Hold for 10 minutes at 55 Hz. All major resonances must be above 55 Hz.
Shock (Operating and Non-operating)	Three guillotine-type shocks of 30 g, one-half sine, 11 ms duration each direction along each major axis; total of 18 shocks.
Transit Drop (Free Fall)	8 inch, one per each of six faces and eight corners (Instrument is tested and meets drop height of 12 inches).

* After storage at temperatures below -15° C, the instrument may not reset when power is first turned on. If this happens, allow the instrument to warm up for at least 15 minutes, then turn POWER OFF for 5 seconds and back on.

^b NVRAM is lost below -10°C.

Table 2-8. (Continued).

Characteristic	Description
Electromagnetic Interference Radiated and conducted emission	
FCC	FCC Part 15, sub-part J, Class A.
VDE	VDE 0871, Class B.

PHYSICAL SPECIFICATIONS

Table 2-9 lists the weight and dimensions of the 2711 Spectrum Analyzer.

Table 2-9. Physical characteristics.

Characteristic	Description
Weight	<11.25 kg (25 lbs) maximum, including standard accessories. <10.2 kg (22.5 lbs) nominal for basic configuration.
Dimensions Height with feet and handle	137 mm (5.4 in).
Width With Handle	361 mm (14.2 in).
Without Handle	328 mm (12.9 in).
Depth With Front Panel Cover	445 mm (17.5 in).
Without Front Panel Cover	428 mm (16.85 in).
With Handle Extended	511 mm (20.1 in).

Section 3 — Getting Acquainted

Replace this page with the tab divider of the same name.

SECTION 3

GETTING ACQUAINTED WITH YOUR INSTRUMENT

This section describes the procedure you should follow when your new Spectrum Analyzer arrives from the factory. To prevent damage to the instrument during initial check out and subsequent use, be sure to observe the indicated precautions.

RECEIVING AND UNPACKING

The 2711 Spectrum Analyzer and its standard accessories are carefully packed at the factory using a specially designed shipping container to prevent damage during transit.

If, upon receipt, damage to the shipping container was evident, notify the shipper. Tektronix is not responsible for damage caused during shipping.

If you have not already done so, carefully remove the instrument and its accessories from the shipping container and inspect them for damage. Do not destroy the shipping container. Test instrument operation using the procedure in System Checkout later in this section. If damage or defects are discovered, or if components are missing, notify your Tektronix representative. He or she will instruct you on how to proceed.

PACKAGING AND STORING

In the event that the equipment must be returned to a Tektronix Service Center, carefully package it in the original shipping container. Use the vinyl vapor barrier, and insert the original foam blocks in the same fashion they were received. If the original shipping materials are not available, use a container of equivalent strength and dimensions. Wrap the instrument in a vinyl vapor barrier, and cushion the instrument on all sides with foam or other suitable packing material.

Attach a tag to the instrument clearly showing:

- owner's name and address
- name of the person at your location who may be contacted
- instrument model and serial number
- description of the problem and service expected

The 2711 can be stored up to 90 days in an environment that meets the non-operating specifications. It is suggested that you provide a dust cover. For longer periods, the instrument should be enclosed in a vapor barrier containing appropriate desiccant material and stored in an environment that meets the non-operating specifications. The original shipping material can be used, and is also useful for protecting the 2711 when it is moved.

INSTALLATION

The 2711 is designed for table-top operation in any orientation, and requires no special installation. However, the handle can be positioned at several angles to serve as a convenient tilt stand. To position the handle, pull out at both pivot points on the sides of the instrument, and simultaneously rotate the handle to the desired position.

Tektronix also provides an optional 2711 rackmount adapter kit (Option 30) which requires a 133 mm (5 1/4 inch) vertical clearance, and a "cradle mount" adapter (Option 34) which requires 178 mm (7 inches). Contact your Tektronix representative for additional information.

The 2711 is equipped with a plastic front panel cover to protect it from mechanical damage. The cover should always be used when transporting the instrument. To remove the cover, place the instrument on its back feet, and then simultaneously pull out and up slightly on each side of the cover.

Regardless of where the 2711 is used or installed, always provide at least 51 mm (2 inches) of clearance adjacent to the cooling vents at the sides, bottom, and back of the instrument.

See Section 2, *Specifications*, for input power requirements.

PRECAUTIONS

The 2711 is rugged but not indestructible. It can be damaged by:

- applying too large a signal to the input
- applying incorrect mains power
- allowing moisture, dust, or other contaminants inside the case
- handling the instrument with undue roughness
- not providing proper ventilation

Never apply signals to the 2711 input if their combined amplitude is greater than +20 dBm, or if there is a DC component greater than 100 volts. *If you exceed these maximum input ratings, you can permanently damage the instrument.*

If necessary, use an external attenuator first. Further, to prevent damaging transients, use maximum RF Attenuation when connecting a signal with a DC component. Then remove attenuation as needed to make the measurement. Also be aware that the 2711 is optimized for a -30 dBm input to the first mixer. A larger input signal may lead to non-linear operation and inaccurate results.

DO NOT connect the 2711 directly to a CATV trunk carrying AC power. The mixer can be overloaded making accurate measurements impossible, and a surge in the power might place the peak AC voltage above the level tolerable by the instrument.

NOTE

The maximum safe RF and DC input levels are clearly printed near the signal input jack.

The 2711 will accept mains power up to 250 Vrms (see section 2 for additional information). In the normal laboratory or factory environment, using standard plugs and receptacles, it is unlikely that you will apply incorrect power. However, in the field or during abnormal conditions, you might have to rig temporary power. Be certain that any power source connected to the 2711 applies less than 250 Vrms between conductors or between either conductor and ground. To safeguard the source, ensure that it is rated for at least 120 Watt operation.

Avoid exposing your instrument to water, chemicals, dust, or grit or other contaminants; the case is not water- or air-tight. Do not place liquid containers on or near the instrument where they can be spilled into it. Use the Travel Line rain cover (Option 33), or other suitable covering, when transporting the 2711 out of doors in inclement weather.



*Although the 2711 can be operated in any orientation, you must ensure that the clearance provided by the feet is maintained on the bottom and that there are at least two inches clearance around other sides. **DO NOT** block the air intake areas on the sides or bottom of the 2711 or the exhaust area at the rear. Never run the instrument inside a case.*

Do not physically abuse the 2711. It can withstand a fair amount of rough handling, but dropping it off a workbench or bouncing it around the trunk of a car or the back of a truck may cause damage. Protect the instrument while transporting it and use it where it cannot be accidentally hit, kicked, or dropped.

SYSTEM CHECKOUT

After you have observed the foregoing precautions, you are ready to perform the initial system checkout. Checkout consists of "normalizing" the 2711 and then measuring the frequency and amplitude of the built-in calibration source. In the process, you will become acquainted with the front panel and the display.

NOTE

*During this section, perform the operations that are highlighted with **bold text**.*

Turning On the 2711

Make sure there is no signal source connected to the instrument and plug in the power cord. Then press **[POWER]**.

The green LED adjacent to the power switch lights indicating that power is turned on. The LED indicators flash and you hear a few beeps as the instrument performs its power-up "self test."

When power is applied to the 2711, it initializes its front-panel controls to settings stored in memory. If the instrument has been used before, those settings may be user-defined (see **User-Defined Power-up Settings** in section 6). If no user-defined settings exist, the 2711 defaults to the factory power-up settings which are permanently stored in read-only memory (ROM).

A display appears on screen almost immediately. You may see the messages:

**WAITING FOR USER DEFINED POWERUP
WARMUP TIME 15 MIN**

When the factory-default power-up settings are used, the WAITING FOR USER DEFINED POWERUP message does not appear and it is possible to make general observations immediately after the power is turned on. If user-defined power-up settings are implemented, the WAITING FOR USER DEFINED POWERUP message appears briefly. The front panel is locked out while the message is displayed. After the message disappears, the user-defined settings replace the factory default settings and normal operation begins.

Whichever settings are used, the WARMUP message is displayed. It disappears after a few seconds. Remember, however, that the instrument may require a full 15 minutes to be operating within specification. Consequently, measurement errors and system messages can occur within the warm-up period, particularly if you switch the 2711 to a narrow span or resolution bandwidth filter.

Initial Normalization

You may also see the following phrase during warm-up:

NORMALIZATION SUGGESTED

Normalization is a process by which the 2711 measures and stores its own calibration parameters using a built-in reference. When this message appears, the instrument is reporting that its self-test feature has determined that the performance of the 2711 no longer matches that predicted by the previous normalization. It is not unusual for the message to appear during the warm-up period, especially if a narrow resolution bandwidth filter is called for by user-defined power-up settings, or if the ambient temperature is different than that at which the previous normalization was performed. If the message remains (or reappears) after the warm-up period, a new normalization should be carried out. Normalization ensures the utmost accuracy when making measurements. It is suggested that, whenever maximum accuracy is required, you allow your instrument to reach a stable operating temperature in the environment in which the measurements will be carried out, and then perform a normalization before making the measurements.

You will now perform a normalization to ensure the calibration of the 2711, and to verify its operational status. Here, we will simply tell you how to do it, but additional information about normalization may be found in Section 6 under *Normalizing the 2711*.

To normalize the 2711, ensure that all external signals are disconnected from the instrument, and then press:

[UTIL] [3]

Pressing the [UTIL] and [3] keys calls up a menu which offers you a choice of normalization processes.

Press [0] to select ALL PARAMETERS¹.

¹ Does not include the optional tracking generator (Option 04).

Normalization should begin immediately and continue without interruption until it is completed. Normalizing all parameters requires several minutes. During the process, you will see various displays and messages which keep you informed of progress, but do not require action. The process ends with an audible beep and the:

NORMALIZATION COMPLETE

message indicating satisfactory operation. If you receive any other message terminating this initial normalization, repeat the procedure. If the message persists, contact your Tektronix Service Center.

Restoring the Factory Default Settings

To ensure a uniform starting point for the calibration signal measurement, restore the factory-default power-on settings by pressing:

[UTIL] [1] [1]

Pressing [UTIL] [1] [1] restores the factory-default settings whenever the 2711 is in normal spectral display mode (and most other modes). It is a handy method of returning to a fixed set of conditions if you get lost.

The factory defaults set the reference level and span to maximum. With the reference level at maximum, the incoming signal undergoes maximum RF attenuation. This is a safeguard designed to prevent overloading the first mixer stage of the instrument. The span is set to maximum so that you observe the entire input frequency range of the 2711. This prevents you from overlooking a large off-screen signal which might overload the input or the first mixer. We urge you to use these settings whenever you input a new or unknown signal to the instrument.

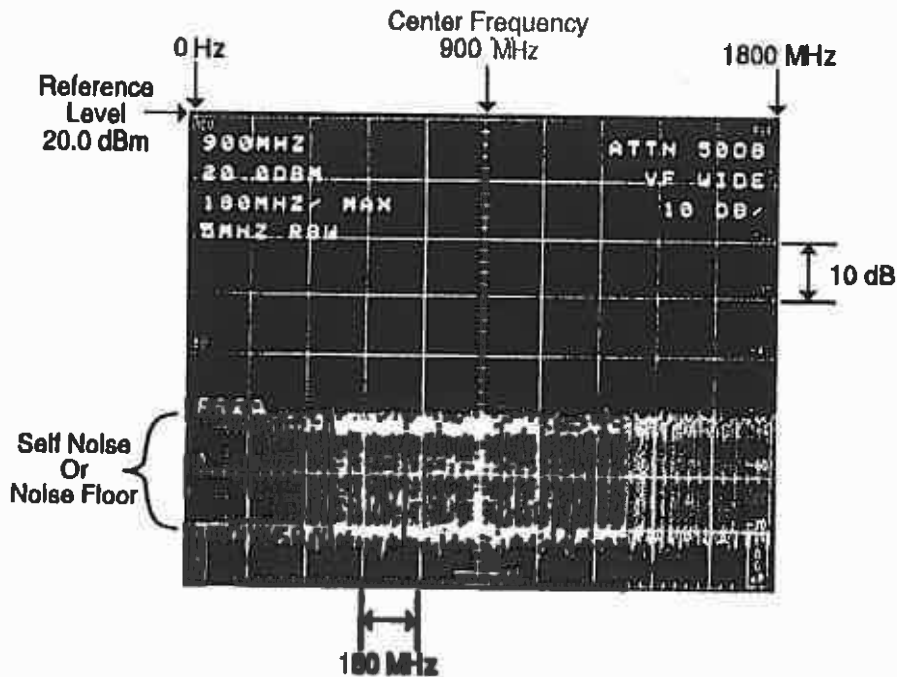


Figure 3-1. 2711 display with factory power-up settings.

The Initial Display

Figure 3-1 shows what the screen looks like with the factory power-up settings implemented. The displayed spectrum represents the noise floor of the 2711. The *noise floor* is the amplitude of the noise generated internally by the instrument itself and passed through the resolution bandwidth filter. Narrowing the resolution bandwidth lowers the noise floor because noise power is proportional to the resolution bandwidth.

The noise appears as a thick, irregular band across the bottom half of the screen. To achieve this appearance, digital display storage is used. The unique *max/min* display shown here is designed to resemble the analog spectra which the 2711 inherently produces.

To see the analog display, press:

[D]

Center frequency	RF attenuation
Reference level	Video filter bandwidth
Horizontal scale factor	Vertical scale factor
Resolution bandwidth	
Various messages may appear as needed below the data readout columns	

Figure 3-2. Normal on-screen data readouts.

This turns off the D storage register (the only one currently enabled). When all registers are turned off, the analog display appears. **Press [D] repeatedly to toggle the D-register on and off, and notice the similarity between displays. Leave the D-register turned on (red LED beneath the [D] key lit.**

To obtain the max/min display, the maximum and minimum amplitudes of the analog spectrum are each sampled at 256 points. Plotting the two interleaved sets of 256 points produces the 512 point graph of the spectrum that you see. This display not only imitates the analog spectrum, but can also assist in detecting low-level signals by more effectively showing the characteristic void they produce under the noise floor.

The spectral display is overlaid by a 32-character wide by 16-character high text screen. Not all of the text fields are displayed all the time, and you can turn the text screen on and off by pressing [READOUT].

The top half of the text screen contains two data readout columns which are present whenever the text screen is turned on. The readouts show instrument settings or measurement results. Figure 3-2 shows the data normally displayed in the readout columns.

You can optionally display starting frequency (frequency at the left edge of the display) at the top of the left column instead of center frequency.

If the instrument is placed in MAX SPAN mode as it is now, the resulting spectrum spans the entire input frequency range. In this mode (indicated by MAX following the horizontal scale factor), the

first item in the left column lists the frequency at the location of the *marker* (the intensified spot on the display).

The types of information in the right column may change depending on operating mode. You will learn when to expect alternate information as we discuss the various modes.

Below the readout columns, messages and indicators appear as warranted, and numeric instrument settings can be entered.

Control Panel Basics

The control panel possesses several characteristics which make it easy and convenient to operate:

- Controls with related functions are generally grouped together. The groupings are defined by the borders or background color surrounding the controls. We shall refer to the groupings as *function blocks*.
- *Dedicated function keys* permit quick selection of important measurement functions.
- *Arrow keys* directly increase and decrease critical control settings.
- *Menu keys* located in the MENUS function block call up lists of operator-selectable features.
- *Numeric keypad keys* permit selection of menu options and entering of critical measurement parameters.
- *Terminator keys* in the keypad block designate the correct units for numeric entries with a single keystroke.
- An *immediate entry mode* which enables you to enter arbitrary values for the frequency, span, and reference level directly from the keypad.
- Red LED *function status indicators* adjacent to certain keys indicate when the functions are active.
- Green LED *register status indicators* illuminate when any storage register contains a saved waveform.

If desired, spectrum measurements may be carried out using only the front panel dedicated function keys; you do not have to use menus. Notice especially that the controls most fundamental to

spectrum measurements (FREQUENCY, SPAN/DIV, and REF LEVEL) are located in a single central function block with a dark gray background. These controls can be conveniently set using either the arrow keys or immediate entry mode.

The arrow keys enable you to instantly change control settings. [\uparrow] always increases its related parameter, whereas [\downarrow] decreases it. The arrow keys are active whenever the instrument is in spectral display mode.

In immediate entry mode, you press the key corresponding to the parameter you wish to set (FREQUENCY, SPAN/DIV, or REF LEVEL), type the parameter value on the keypad, and press the appropriate terminator key to complete the entry. The value appears on screen as you type.

Each of the terminator keys ([W], [X], [Y], [Z]) can represent more than one unit as indicated by the legend to the right of each key. However, the keys are context sensitive: if an entry represents a frequency, the indicated frequency unit is selected automatically when you press the key. For example, if dBs are required, the indicated dB unit is selected.

One other noteworthy feature: many keys are toggle-action. The ability to undo an action, including menu selection, by pushing the same button, or sequence of buttons, that carried out the action is typical of operations performed on the 2711.

To observe the toggle action, press:

[VID FLTR]

The red video filter LED illuminates, and the trace shrinks vertically as the filter turns on and averages the noise.

Press [VID FLTR] again.

The noise spectrum expands to its original size as the filter is turned off, and the LED goes out.

Sounds

The 2711 can emit tones under the following conditions:

- during power-on self test
- when an abnormal condition occurs
- when a message appears
- when a key is pressed

The self test tones were produced when you turned on the 2711. The tone may be set to sound when an error occurs, when a key is pressed, when either happens, or never.

If an abnormal condition exists, such as a request to extend a measurement parameter beyond its range, the 2711 emits the high-level tone. A message is simultaneously displayed on screen describing the abnormal condition.

The 2711 can also emit other sounds. It is equipped with AM and FM demodulator circuits which extract the audio signals on amplitude or frequency modulated RF signals. The demodulated audio is reproduced from the built-in speaker. This feature can be used to identify most voice channels based on their content or call signs, and can help to identify others by enabling you to determine the type of modulation (frequency shift keying, pulsed CW, etc.). For better quality audio or private listening, use the headphone jack on the right side of the instrument. The AM/FM demodulators are covered in the discussion of the DEMOD/TG Menu in section 6.

The Built-In Calibrator

The 2711 is equipped with a built-in calibration source. This calibrator may be different from others you have encountered because there is no external "Cal Signal" output. Instead, the calibrator signal is internally connected to the input, without the need for external cabling (and attendant mismatches), by selecting the proper INPUT MENU option.

To call up the INPUT MENU, press:

[INPUT]

Item 9 specifies a **CAL SIG @ 100MHz -30DBM**. The calibrator is a CW signal with a fundamental frequency of 100 MHz \pm 5 kHz at an amplitude of -30 ± 0.3 dBm. Higher order harmonics at lower levels are also present. Item 9 toggles the calibrator on and off.

Turn the calibrator on by pressing:

[9]

The screen reverts immediately to the spectral display. The word **CALIBRATOR** now appears near the bottom right of the screen signifying that the calibrator is turned on. You should see a few signal peaks towards the left of the display. These are the calibration signal's fundamental and harmonics. If you do not see them, the amplitudes of the harmonics may be lower than the 2711's noise floor.

NOTE

When the calibrator is turned on, the normal RF input is disconnected internally from the input attenuator and cannot be viewed.

Turn the calibrator off by pressing:

[INPUT] [9]

Making Your First Measurement

You will begin by verifying the frequency and amplitude of the 2711's calibration signal. Although the calibration signal is used, the measurement technique is the same for any continuous signal. In the process, you will learn to use three of the most important controls on the instrument, and to confirm that the major functions of the instrument are operating correctly.

The factory defaults set the instrument's RF attenuation to 50 dB. This affords the most protection to the instrument because any signal at the input undergoes maximum attenuation before reaching the power-sensitive mixer circuit. It is recommended that you use this setting when connecting unknown signals to the 2711. The span is set to 180 MHz per division. This is maximum span, and is indicated by the word MAX in the span readout. This is the safe setting for introducing new signals. It enables you to view the entire measurement range (1.8 GHz) of the instrument. If a smaller span is used, large signals can be present off screen. Remember – the *total signal power* (that is, all signals on screen or off added together), not just the signal of interest, must remain below +20 dBm. With a small span it is possible to reduce the attenuation to view a weak, on-screen signal while inadvertently allowing an off-screen, high-level signal to saturate the mixer. Spurious responses, and possibly even damage to the mixer, are often the result. **Press [INPUT] [9] to turn on the built-in calibrator via the Input Menu.**

You will now use the three primary controls on the instrument to measure the calibration signal. These are contained in the central, dark gray function block shown in Figure 3-3.

These, and the large FREQ/MKRS knob to the left, are the controls you will use most often. In principle, you can make nearly all measurements with only these controls, although you will find that other controls and menu features enable you to make many measurements more quickly and conveniently. First, you need to raise the displayed signal height. You do this by reducing the reference level. The reference level represents the signal power needed to deflect the displayed spectrum to the top graticule line. The 2711 provides several methods of directly changing reference level. The most convenient method is to press the [↓] [↑] keys.

Press [↓] (to the right of [REF LEVEL]) 3 times to reduce the reference level by 30 dB, to -10 dBm. Figure 3-4 shows the resulting display. Do not be concerned if some of the signal peaks on your instrument have slightly different amplitudes than those shown in the illustration.

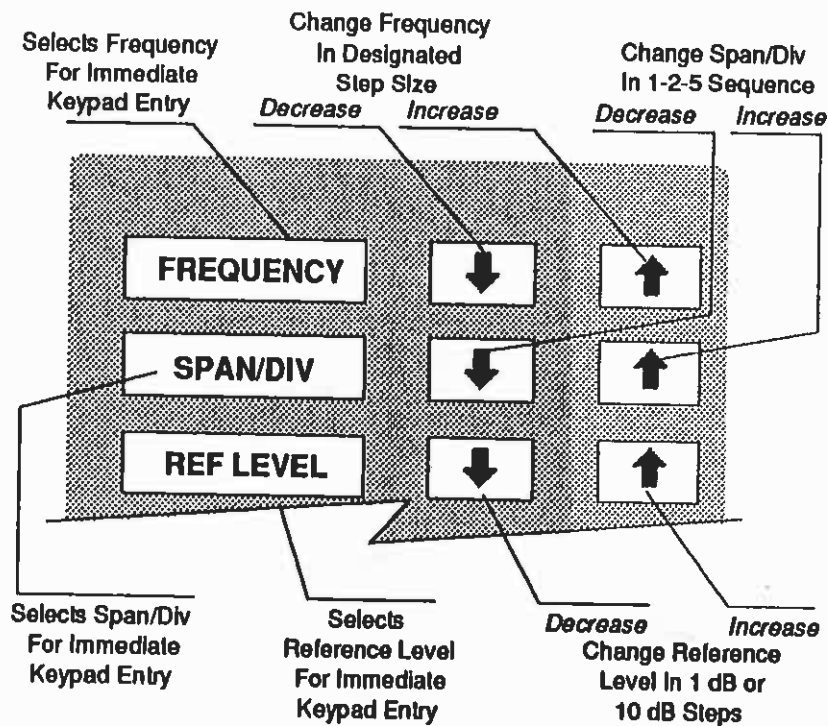


Figure 3-3. The 2711's primary controls.

Notice that both the reference level and RF attenuation readouts have decreased 30 dB (the reference level is -10 dBm and the RF attenuation is 20 dB).

Normally the arrow keys change the reference level 10 dB per press, but in FINE mode the value changes 1 dB per press. The immediate entry mode will now be used to set the reference level to -28 dBm. We have chosen this value for two reasons:

- Signal amplitudes are read out and displayed most accurately when they are near the reference level.
- This level is 2 dB greater than the expected signal amplitude, providing a small screen area above the peak if the signal is larger than anticipated.

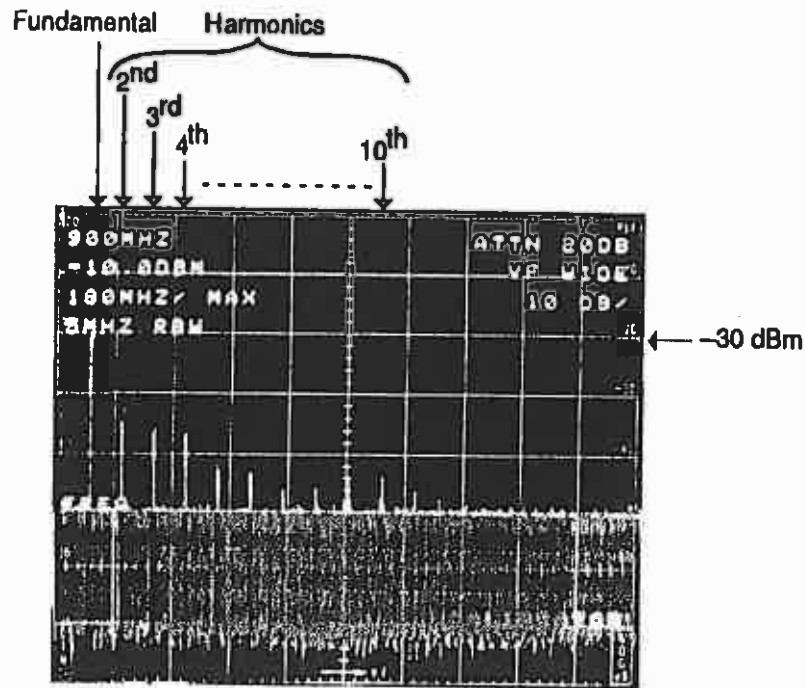


Figure 3-4. 100 MHz calibration signal and harmonics.

First press [REF LEVEL] to place reference level in immediate entry mode. The abbreviation REFL will appear at the left center of the screen.

The REFL indicator indicates that you can enter the reference level directly from the keypad. This is done by typing a permissible value followed by an appropriate terminator key.

NOTE

In spectral display mode the abbreviation for the control last placed in immediate entry mode remains on screen until another control is chosen. When a control is in immediate entry mode, repeated settings for that control can be entered without having to press FREQUENCY, SPAN/DIV or REF LEVEL again. Only the primary controls can be placed in immediate entry mode.

Press [2] [8] to set the reference level to -28 dBm. The numbers you type appear on screen to the right of REFL. If you make a mistake, press [BKSP] (the backspace key) until the incorrect number disappears, and then enter the correct value.

After the correct number has been entered, press [Z] for -dBx. The [Z] key can represent units of Hz or -dBx. Because you selected an entry mode (immediate reference level entry) which requires decibels, and because the factory-default unit is the dBm, the instrument correctly interprets the currently displayed entry as -28 dBm. If the currently selected reference level units had been dBmV or dBW, the 2711 would have interpreted your entry as such when you pressed the terminator key.

The RF attenuation is now reduced to 2 dB and the reference level readout indicates the desired -28 dBm. This entry method enabled you to specify a reference level which could not be achieved with the arrow keys unless FINE mode is used. With the direct entry mode, fractional reference levels to the nearest 0.1 dB are possible.

The instrument is still in max span mode, which means that the harmonics of the calibration signal are less than one division apart. Next you will spread them out by reducing the span/division. As in the case of the reference level, two direct methods are possible.

Press [↓] (to the right of the [SPAN/DIV] key) twice to reduce the span to 50 MHz/division. Notice that the readout now indicates 50MHZ/, and the harmonics are two divisions apart.

Suppose, however, that you want to view just a single harmonic and the 30 MHz band to either side of it. You can do so by setting the span to 6MHz/division. This value is not obtainable with the arrow keys, but you can select it in immediate entry mode.

First press [SPAN/DIV] to place span in immediate entry mode. Notice that the message SPAN appears at the left center of the screen.

The SPAN message indicates you that may enter the span/div directly from the keypad. This is done by typing in a permissible value followed by an appropriate terminator key.

Press [6] to set the span/division to 6 MHz. Any number you type appears on screen to the right of SPAN. If you make a mistake, press [BKSP] (the backspace key) until the incorrect number disappears, and then enter the correct value.

After the correct number has been entered, press [X] for MHz. The [X] key can represent units of MHz, mSEC, or mV. Because you selected an entry mode which requires a frequency, the instrument correctly interprets the currently displayed entry as 6 MHz. If a time or voltage unit had been required, the 2711 would have interpreted your entry as 6 mSEC or 6 mV, respectively.

The span is now set to 6 MHz/ and the ninth harmonic of the calibration signal is centered on screen at 900MHz. You may have noticed that the resolution bandwidth changed to 300KHZ. This demonstrates the AUTO resolution bandwidth selection mode. The 2711 reduces its resolution bandwidth as you reduce the span/div, so the resolving power of the instrument automatically increases as you examine the spectrum more closely.

To view the calibration signal fundamental, you must change the center frequency to 100 MHz. The instrument provides three direct methods of doing so, each appropriate under different circumstances.

Press the [\uparrow] key to the right of [FREQUENCY] twice. Notice that the center frequency readout now indicates 888.0MHz. The frequency arrow keys change the center or start frequency by 10 times the automatically selected tuning increment, but you can change the tuning rate – see *Selecting the Tuning Increment* in Section 6. You could continue pressing [\uparrow] until the correct frequency is reached, but this would require a large number of presses with the current settings.

This method of changing frequency is very useful for scanning relatively small bands. To change by larger amounts, use the immediate entry mode.

Press [FREQUENCY] to place the center or start frequency in Immediate entry mode. Notice that the message **FREQ appears at left center of the screen.**

The **FREQ** message indicates that you can enter a center frequency directly from the keypad. This is done by typing in a permissible value followed by an appropriate terminator key.

Press [1] [0] [1] to set the center frequency to 101 MHz. The numbers you type appear on screen to the right of **FREQ**. If you make a mistake, press **[BKSP]** (the backspace key) until the incorrect number disappears, and then enter the correct value.

After the correct number has been entered, press [X] for MHz. The **[X]** key can represent units of MHz, mSEC, or mV. Because you selected an entry mode which requires a frequency, the instrument correctly interprets the currently displayed entry as 101 MHz. If a time or voltage unit had been required, the 2711 would have interpreted your entry as 101 mSEC or 101 mV. Alternately, had you wished to set the frequency to 101 kHz, you would have pressed **[Y]** for kHz.

This method of changing center or start frequency is most useful when large changes are required, or if you know exactly what frequency is required.

The span is now set to 6 MHz/ and the fundamental of the calibration signal is not quite centered on the screen. You will now center the calibration signal with the **FREQ/MKRS** knob.

Rotate the **FREQ/MARKERS knob several clicks counterclockwise to reduce the center or start frequency.** Each click reduces the frequency by the currently selected tuning increment (0.02 times the span/div, or 0.12 MHz in this case). This control functions as the "fine" frequency adjustment. Rotating the knob clockwise increases the frequency at the same rate.

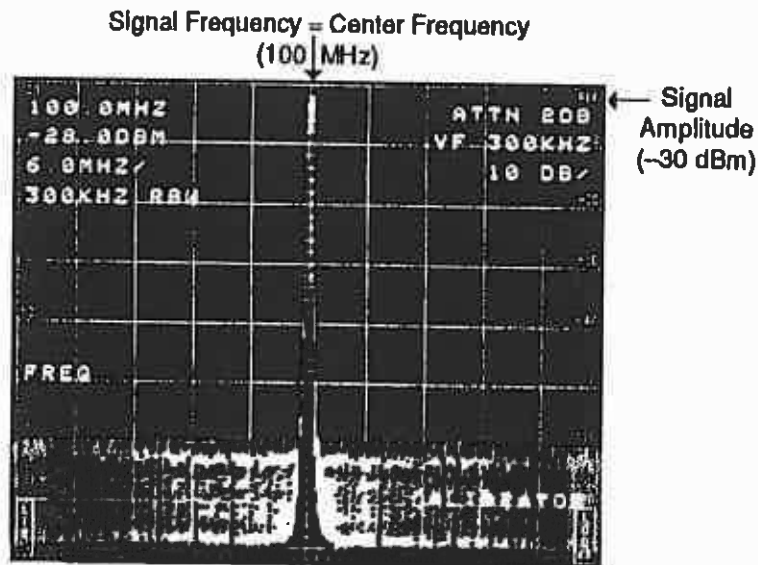


Figure 3-5. Calibration signal fundamental.

Continue turning the knob in either direction until the signal is centered. Your screen should now resemble Figure 3-5.

The signal frequency is 100 MHz and the signal peak is 0.2 divisions below the reference level, so its amplitude is -30 dBm:

$$-28 \text{ dBm ref level} - (0.2 \text{ div} \times 10 \text{ dB/div}) = -30 \text{ dBm}$$

By using only the frequency, span, and reference level controls you have just verified the basic operation of the 2711 Spectrum Analyzer, and determined the frequency and amplitude of its calibration signal. With these same controls plus one other, measurements become easier and more accurate. See Section 5 for more details.

Section 4 — Operation Summary

Replace this page with the tab divider of the same name.

SECTION 4

OPERATION SUMMARY

This section provides an overview of the 2711's display, menus, controls, and connectors. The experienced spectrum analyzer user will find it a handy guide to most instrument features.

DISPLAY SCREEN

The display consists of an 8-division high by 10-division wide (256 x 512 point) graphical screen with a 16-row by 32-character text screen overlay. In spectral display mode both the graphic and text data are normally present, although the text screen can be toggled on and off by pressing the READOUT key. In menu display mode, only the text screen is normally present, but the sweep display can be turned on (see *The Spectral Display In Menus* in section 6).

The entire screen area is available for the sweep display, but contents of the text screen are placed in predetermined screen locations. Figure 4-1 shows the text screen layout used in spectral display mode. When the optional "Display Title" line is not used, rows 2 through 11 and rows 13, 14, and 15 move up one position.

Figure 4-2 shows the text screen for menu display mode. The menu footer area contains prompts, general information, and data entries including:

- Which key to press to return to the spectral display
- Which key to press to back up one menu level
- Which menu key was pressed to enter this menu
- What data to enter
- Data that has already been entered
- Which terminator key to press

LINE #	SCREEN CONTENT
1	Display Title (Optional)
2	Center Freq/Start Freq RF Atten/Mkr Freq/Counter Freq
3	Reference Level Vid Fitr BW/Marker Amplitude*
4	Horizontal Scale "TRK" Indicator Vert Scale*
5	Resolution BW Blank/TV Channel/Video Line
6	"UNCAL" Indicator Single Sweep Messages
7	Error Message
8	User-Defined Program Title
9	Displayed Message
10	UDP Status
11	Keypad entry/WFM to Save
12	Real-time Clock Display
13	
14	
15	TG Amplitude "CALIBRATOR" Indicator/TG Tracking
16	"WARMUP TIME 15 MIN" Message/GPIB & RS-232 Status

Figure 4-1. Layout of the text screen in spectral display mode.

*May also contain C/N, NOISE NORM'D, BW, & OBW results.

LINE #	SCREEN CONTENT
1	Menu Title
2	
3	Up To 10
4	Items (0-9) Displayed
5	Here
6	:
7	:
8	:
9	:
10	:
11	:
12	:
13	Error Message
14	Data Entry
15	Footer area containing prompts,
16	general information, and data entries.

Figure 4-2. Layout of the text screen in menu display mode.

CONNECTORS, CONTROLS, AND MENUS

Most of the front-panel controls are located in function blocks that are denoted by their borders or background colors. Each block contains related controls. The central gray-colored block contains the fundamental center (or start) frequency, span, and reference level controls. For convenience, one function block is dedicated exclusively to menu display. The control panel and its major functional areas are shown in Figures 4-3 to 4-8. Detailed discussions of the controls may be found in section 5.

Trace alignment controls and various input/output connectors are located at the rear of the instrument. Figure 4-9 shows the back panel and its connectors. The alignment controls are discussed at the end of section 5 under **Miscellaneous Controls**, and the connector terminations are described in section 7, **External Input and Output**.

The menus are shown in Tables 4-1 through 4-8.

NOTE

Some menu items are not present. These are either absent from the instrument itself, or represent lower level menus present in the instrument but intended primarily for factory calibration and troubleshooting.

A brief description of the function of each listed menu selection is given. The functions of the menu selections are discussed in greater detail in section 6, **Software Controls - The Menus**.

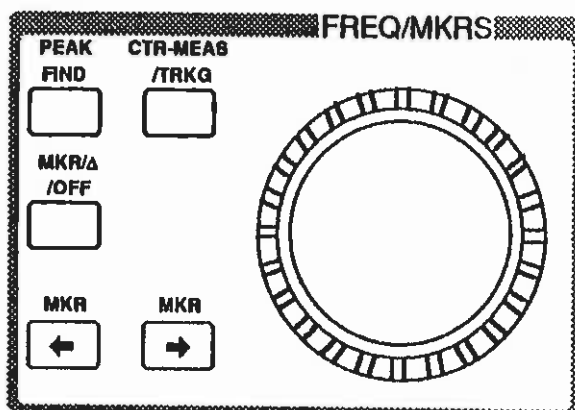
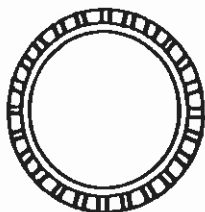


Figure 4-3. The frequency/marker function block.

FREQ/MKRS

In the normal spectral display mode, this knob changes the center or start frequency by .02 of the span/div per click (2 MHz per click when in 100 MHz/div). Programmed or tabular tuning modes change frequency by a menu-selected, or user-defined, tuning increment per click; in ZERO SPAN by a percent of the resolution BW per click (see *Selecting the Tuning Increment* in section 6). In other modes it may control marker horizontal position, video line number, or TG tracking.

CTR-MEAS**/TRKG**

The first press of this key initiates a center measure (frequency of signal nearest center screen, or nearest the marker if active, is measured and made the new center frequency). When Option 02 is installed, signal frequency and amplitude are displayed at the upper right of the screen. Two quick presses enter signal track mode (continuously repeated center measures, enabling a drifting signal to be tracked). When signal track mode is active, a third press returns the instrument to normal operation.

**PEAK
FIND**

This key moves the marker to the highest on-screen signal peak (turns the marker on if it is not active). Signals must be above the detection threshold (see **Setting the Signal Threshold** in section 6).

**MKR/ Δ
/OFF**

The first press turns on a single marker at center screen; its position is controllable with the **FREQ/MKRS** knob. A second press fixes the position of the first marker and turns on a second marker (delta marker mode); its position controllable with the **FREQ/MKRS** knob. Third press turns off both markers.

MKR**MKR**

Each key jumps the moveable marker from its current position to the next on-screen signal peak to the left or right, respectively. Signals must be above the detection threshold (see **Setting the Signal Threshold** in section 6).

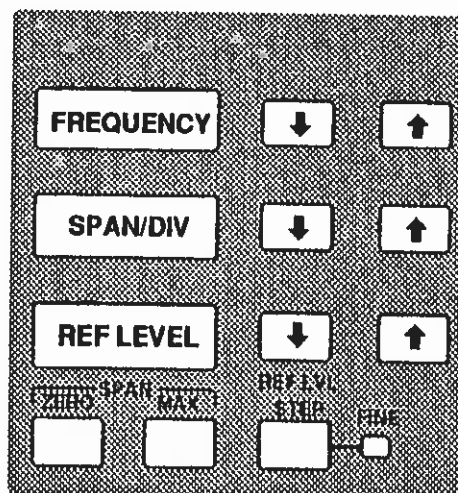


Figure 4-4. Fundamental controls.

FREQUENCY

This key selects the center or start frequency for immediate entry mode. FREQ appears on-screen at left center. Enter the desired frequency from the KEYPAD; terminate with Hz, kHz, MHz, or GHz [W], [X], [Y], or [Z].

Range: 0 Hz to 1.8 GHz

SPAN/DIV

This key selects the span per division for immediate entry mode. SPAN appears on-screen at left center. Enter the desired span/division from the KEYPAD; terminate with Hz, kHz, MHz, or GHz [W], [X], [Y], or [Z].

Range: 10 kHz to 180 MHz

REF LEVEL

This key selects the reference level for immediate entry mode. REFL appears on-screen at left center. Enter the desired reference level from the KEYPAD; terminate with +dBx or -dBx ([Y] or [Z]).

Range: +20 to -70 dBm (or equivalent in other units)



The arrow keys increase [\uparrow] or decrease [\downarrow] the FREQUENCY, SPAN/DIV, and REF LEVEL by a specified amount. They are always active in spectral display mode, even if the parameter is not selected for immediate entry.

FREQUENCY change: equivalent of 50 knob clicks in AUTO tuning increment mode, and by the designated tuning increment in other modes.

SPAN/DIV change: in 1-2-5 sequence from 10 kHz to 180 MHz.

REF LEVEL change: 1 dB or 10 dB per step depending on REF LVL STEP setting.

ZERO



and

MAX



These keys provide shortcuts to the zero span and maximum span settings. The keys are toggles; one press activates the setting, and the second returns to the span used prior to the first press.

ZERO SPAN: no frequency sweep, horizontal axis calibrated in time/div, and the display is a time domain representation of the signal at the indicated center or start frequency.

MAX SPAN: 180 MHz/div (often used to view full input range of 0-1.8 GHz).

**REF LVL
STEP**



This key toggles the amount by which the REF LEVEL arrow keys change the reference level between 1 dB and 10 dB per press. The adjacent FINE Indicator is illuminated when 1 dB is selected.

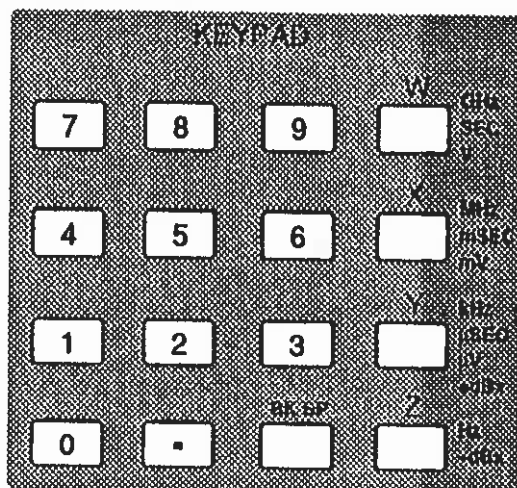


Figure 4-5. The KEYPAD.

NUMERIC KEYS [0] Through [9]

Numeric keys are used to enter numerical values in Immediate entry mode or in response to menu prompts. They are also used to select the numbered items from menus.

TERMINATOR KEYS [W], [X], [Y], [Z]

The terminator keys signify the end of an entry and supply the appropriate units for the entry. They are context sensitive. If [X] is pressed, the Instrument automatically interprets it as MHz, mSEC, or mV depending on the parameter being entered.

DOT KEY [.]

The dot key supplies the decimal point in numeric entries and may be used as a period in label and title entries.

BACKSPACE KEY [BKSP]

This key erases the last character pressed in data entry modes, and backs up one menu level when menus are active.

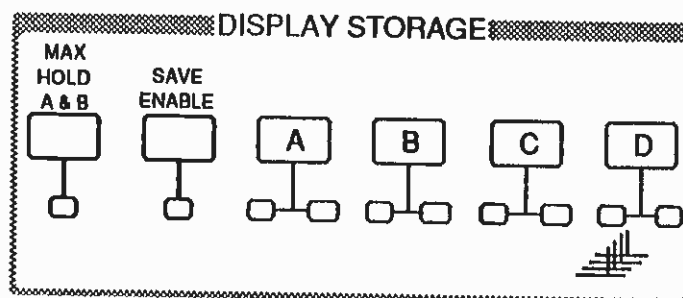


Figure 4-6. Display register control.

REGISTER SELECT AND SAVE KEYS (A, B, C, D)

Pressing the [A], [B], [C], or [D] key when [SAVE ENABLE] is not armed turns the key's respective register on and off for display. When the register is displaying data (saved or current), the red LED to the lower right of the key is lit.

When [SAVE ENABLE] is armed, pressing the [A], [B], or [C] key

- stores the current sweep if the register is cleared, or
- clears the register if it contains saved data.

The saving or clearing action occurs whether the register is displaying data or not. The green LED to the lower left of the key lights when the register contains saved data.

Pressing the [D] key when [SAVE ENABLE] is armed toggles the 2711 in and out of waterfall display mode. All registers must first be clear. Individual sweeps cannot be saved in D.

SAVE ENABLE



This key arms the save (clear) function. Press [SAVE ENABLE] and then press the key corresponding to the register to be saved (cleared). The LED below the key lights when [SAVE ENABLE] is armed.

MAX HOLD A & B



This key enables max hold mode. When [MAX HOLD] is enabled, the A and B registers retain the largest signal observed (unless they contain saved waveforms). The LED below the key lights when [MAX HOLD] is active.

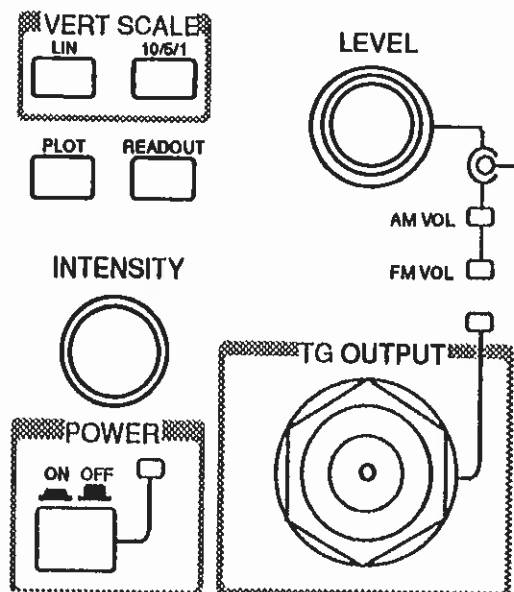
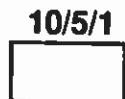


Figure 4-7. Vertical scale, demodulator, TG, and display controls.



Press this key repeatedly to cycle through the LOG (logarithmic) display mode vertical scales in a 10-5-1-10 dB/div sequence.



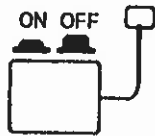
This key toggles the vertical display mode from LOG (logarithmic) to LIN (linear) and back again. The scale factor is controlled by the reference level controls in LIN mode and by [10/5/1] in LOG mode.



This key initiates a screen plot on an optional printer or plotter when Option 03 (GPIB) or Option 08 (RS-232) is installed. The plotter and interface must be correctly configured (see **System Configuration** in section 6).



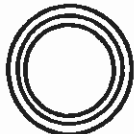
This key toggles the on-screen readouts on and off. Use this feature when readouts overlay data, or to eliminate blanking intervals in the analog display.

POWER

This key toggles the power on and off. Green LED next to key is illuminated when power is on.

INTENSITY

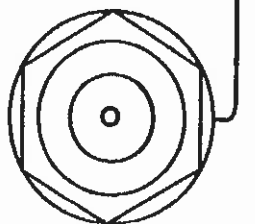
Turn this knob clockwise (increase) or counterclockwise (decrease) to control CRT brightness.

LEVEL

The inner LEVEL knob sets trigger level in INT, EXT, and (AC) LINE trigger modes (as on a conventional oscilloscope), horizontal position in manual scan mode, picture framing in optional video monitor mode, and variable TG level when the optional tracking generator is installed. The outer LEVEL knob controls volume of the AM and FM demodulators.



Lights when the AM or FM demodulators are active to indicate the outer knob of the LEVEL control sets audio volume. See **DEMOD/TG** in section 6.

TG OUTPUT

This Type N, 50 Ω connector is the optional tracking generator (TG) output. The LED above the function block lights when the TG is turned on. See **DEMOD/TG** in section 6.

Amplitude range: 0 to -48 dBm

Frequency range: synchronous with 2711 but can be offset from approximately -5 kHz to +60 kHz

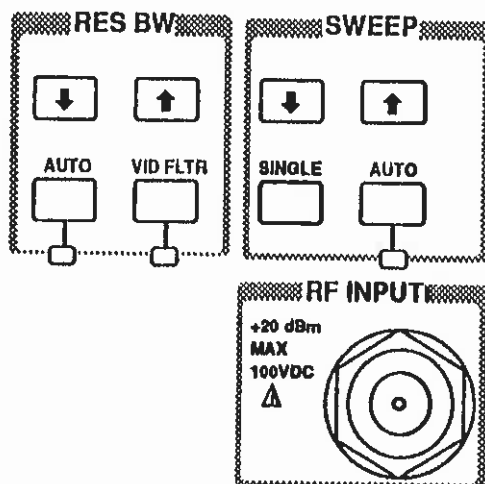


Figure 4-8. Resolution BW and sweep controls, and RF INPUT.

VID FLTR



Normally the 2711 smooths the detected signal with a video filter having a bandwidth equal to the resolution BW. The filter bandwidth is indicated in the right-hand readout column. However, pressing [VID FLTR] toggles an alternate, automatically selected or user-designated, video filter on and off. Its bandwidth replaces the normal video filter readout. You can designate the video filter bandwidth using the UTIL Menu (see *Menu-Entered Control Settings* in section 6).

Automatic selection: 1/100 of the resolution BW

Fixed range: 3 Hz to 300 kHz and WIDE in a 1-3 sequence

SINGLE



The [SINGLE] key places the 2711 in a single sweep mode. SGLSWP MODE appears on screen. With the sweep in (the default) free run mode, press the [SINGLE] key again to start a sweep. In other trigger modes, the sweep begins with the first trigger signal following entry into single sweep mode. SGLSWP ARM appears briefly at the start of each sweep. Press [AUTO] in the SWEEP function block to exit single sweep mode and preserve the current auto or manual sweep rate selection.

AUTO

The [AUTO] keys in the RES BW and SWEEP function blocks toggle the instrument into and out of automatic resolution BW and sweep rate selection modes, respectively. When in automatic mode, the instrument selects the resolution BW and sweep rate appropriate to the currently selected span. The LEDs below the keys are lit when automatic mode is selected. After exiting automatic mode, the resolution BW and sweep rate remain as they were until manually changed. The SWEEP [AUTO] key also exits single sweep mode (but preserves sweep rate selections).



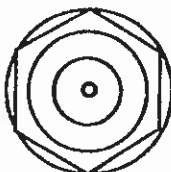
The RES BW and SWEEP arrow keys increase [\uparrow] or decrease [\downarrow] the resolution BW and sweep rate (time/div) in a specified sequence. They are always active in spectral display mode, but using either disables automatic resolution BW or sweep rate selection, respectively.

RES BW range: 3 kHz, 30 kHz, 300 kHz, 5 MHz

SWEEP: Follows 1-2-5 sequence from 2 sec/div to 1 μ sec/div. Rates <100 μ sec/div are usable only in analog display mode.

RF INPUT

+20 dBm
MAX
100VDC

CAUTION

The Spectrum Analyzer RF signal input is a Type N, 50 Ω connector. **OBSERVE MAXIMUM INPUT RATINGS:**

Maximum amplitude: < +20 dBm

Maximum DC: 100 Volts

Frequency range: 9 kHz to 1.8 GHz

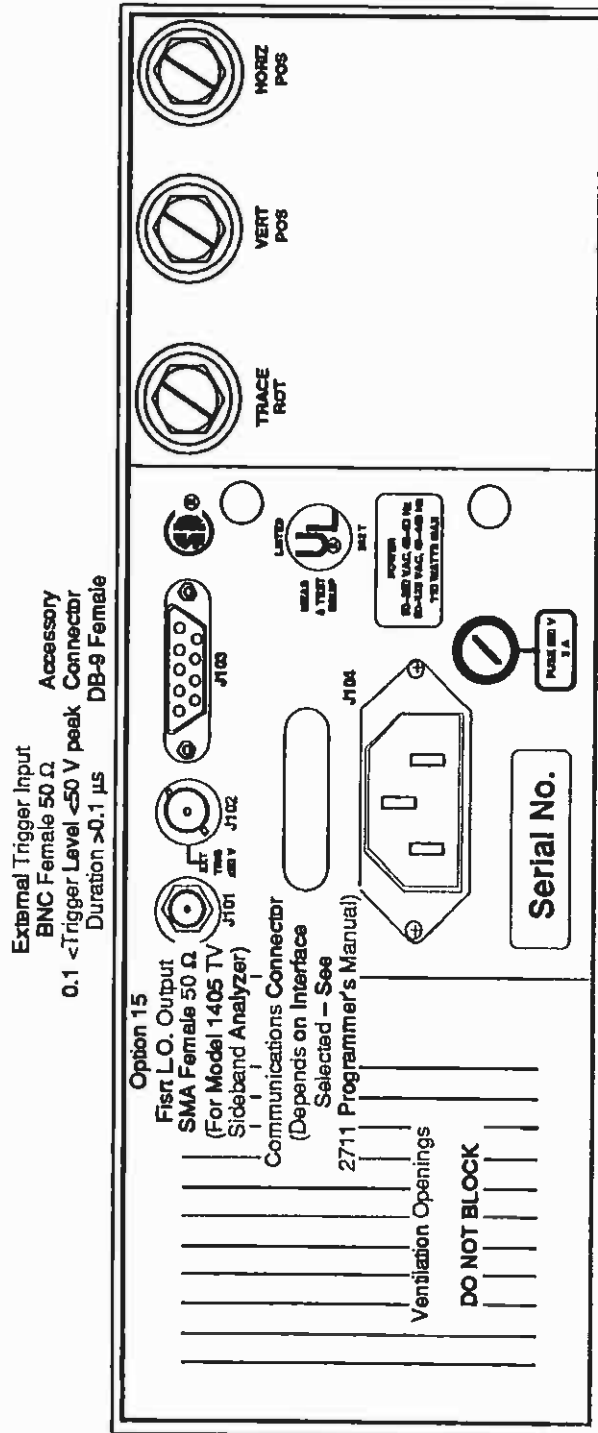
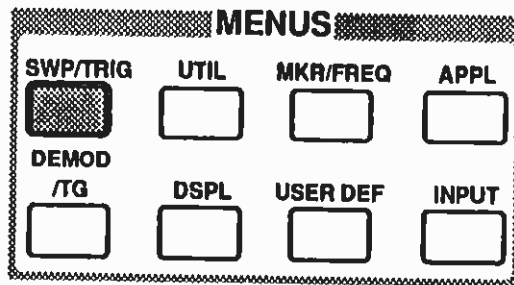


Figure 4-9. The back panel.

Table 4-1. The Sweep/Trigger (SWP/TRIG) Menu.

**TRIGGER MENU**

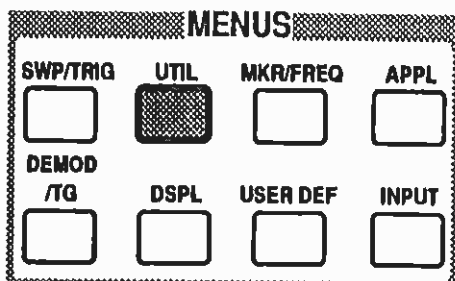
0 FREE RUN	Sweep runs continuously
1 INTERNAL	Triggers sweep from input signal
2 EXTERNAL	Triggers sweep from signal at external trigger input
3 LINE	Triggers sweep from AC line
4 TV LINE	Triggers sweep from TV horizontal sync pulse (see setup table)
5 TV FIELD	Triggers sweep from TV vert sync pulse

SWEEP MENU

6 SWEEP RATE	Enables keypad entry of sweep rate
7 MANUAL SCAN	Toggles manual scan on & off; when on, LEVEL controls horizontal position
8 SYNC POLARITY¹	Toggles video sync pulse polarity between plus and minus
9 SETUP TABLE	
HORIZONTAL LINE TRIGGERING¹	Determines which sync pulse triggers sweep when TV LINE trigger selected
0 CONTINUOUS	Any sync pulse (line) triggers sweep
1 KNOB SELECTABLE¹	FREQ/MKRS knob selects line number; number shown on screen; knob also selected by [MKR/FREQ] [2]
2 KEYPAD ENTERED LINE	Trigger on pulse entered from keypad
3 KEYPAD ENTRY	Enables keypad entry of trigger pulse
4 TV LINE STANDARD	Choose NTSC, PAL, SECAM, or OPEN

¹ Requires Option 10 (Video Monitor).

Table 4-2. The Utility (UTIL) Menu.



0 INITIALIZE INSTR SETTINGS	Reinitializes 2711; user-defined power-up settings implemented; if no user settings, factory default settings used
1 STORED SETTINGS 0 LAST POWER-DOWN 1 FACTORY DEFAULT POWER-UP 2 USER-DEFINED POWER UP 3 & UP USER-DEFINED SETTINGS	Saves & restores settings from a list of up to 37 choices; choices 0 & 1 are reserved; contents of display registers are saved along with settings; settings list consists of 4 screens with 9 or 10 choices each
2 KEYPAD ENTERED SETTINGS	
0 FREQUENCY	Enables keypad entry of center/start freq
1 REFERENCE LEVEL	Enables keypad entry of reference level
2 SPAN/DIV	Enables keypad entry of span/div
3 RF ATTENUATION	Selects FIXED or AUTO RF attenuation and enables keypad entry of fixed atten
4 RESOLUTION BW 0 AUTO 1 FIXED SCALE	Selects FIXED or AUTO RBW and enables keypad entry of fixed RBW
5 VIDEO FILTER 0 AUTO 1 FIXED	Selects FIXED or AUTO video filter BW and enables keypad entry of fixed video filter BW; only method of manually setting video filter BW

Table 4-2. The Utility (UTIL) Menu (Continued).

6 VERTICAL SCALE 0 LOG 1 DB/DIV 1 LOG 5 DB/DIV 2 LOG 10 DB/DIV 3 LINEAR	Selects vertical scale factor of 1, 5, or 10 dB/div, or linear scale
7 SWEEP RATE	Enables keypad entry of sweep rate
3 NORMALIZATIONS 0 ALL PARAMETERS 1 FREQUENCY ONLY 2 AMPLITUDE ONLY 3 TRACKING GENERATOR ONLY ¹	Enables internal normalization of 2711 frequency or amplitude parameters, or both (ALL PARAMETERS); use TRACKING GENERATOR ONLY to normalize TG
4 SYSTEM CONFIGURATION	
0 COMMUNICATIONS PORT² CONFIG 0 GPIB	Toggles between direct and interrupt driven I/O; displays status messages Select to configure GPIB port Toggles GPIB port on and off line
0 STATUS	Enable keypad entry of GPIB address
1 GPIB ADDRESS 2 POWER ON SRQ 3 EOI/LF MODE	Toggles generation of service request at power-up on and off Selects hardware (EOI) or hardware and software (LF) message termination; all TEK instruments support EOI
4 TALK ONLY MODE	Use TALK ONLY when sending data to printer/plotter from 2711 (no controller)

¹ Requires Option 04 (Tracking Generator).² Option 03 (GPIB) or Option 08 (RS-232) are present only if the respective option is installed.

Table 4-2. The Utility (UTIL) Menu (Continued).

2 RS-232 ³	Select to configure RS-232 port
0 STATUS	Toggles RS-232 port on and off line
1 BAUD RATE	Steps through baud rates from 110 to 9600. Start/stop bits auto-selected
2 DATA BITS	Toggles between 7 and 8
3 PARITY	Cycles NONE, ODD, or EVEN
4 EOL	Choose message terminator; CR, LF, or CR and LF
5 FLOW CONTROL	Handshaking protocol; HARD(ware), SOFT(ware), or NONE
6 ECHO	Toggles echo response on and off
7 VERBOSE	Toggles VERBOSE on and off; when on every command receives a response
1 SCREEN PLOT ³ CONFIGURATION	Select to configure communications port for printer/plotter applications
0 COMM PORT	Indicates installed communications port
1 PLOTTER LANGUAGE	Select printer/plotter language; HPGL for plotters, EPSON FX for printers
2 PLOT SPEED	Toggles through a range of plotter speeds from SLOW to FASTEST
3 PLOTS PER PAGE	Toggles between 1 & 4 plots per page
4 PLOT POSITION	Select page position for each of 4 plots
2 PRINTER CONFIGURATION	Toggles printer output between comm port and screen (CRT)
3 INSTRUMENT CONFIGURATION	
0 AUDIO ALERT	Toggles audio tone on for keyclick only, error only, both, or off
1 MINIMUM SIGNAL SIZE	Enables entry of signal amplitude difference necessary for marker functions
2 WAVEFORM TO PRINTER ³	Toggles output on and off following each sweep of ASCII- or binary-formatted waveform data to comm port
3 WVFRM OUTPUT FORMAT ³	Toggles comm port output between ASCII & binary

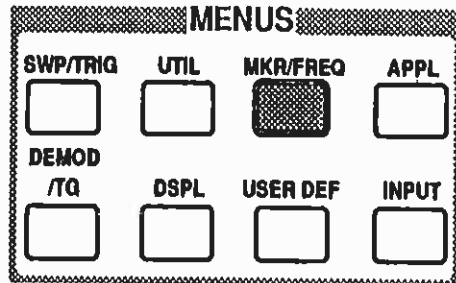
³ Present only if Option 03 (GPIB) or Option 08 (RS-232) option is installed.

Table 4-2. The Utility (UTIL) Menu (Continued).

5 FREQUENCY CORRECTIONS	Toggles frequency correction on & off
6 SPECTRAL DSPL IN MENUS	Causes the spectral display to overlay the menus so you can see the display while using the menus
7 SWEEP HOLDOFF	Toggles sweep holdoff between NORMAL & SHORT HOLDOFF
4 REAL-TIME CLOCK SETUP ⁴	Enables keypad entry of clock data
5 STORED SETTINGS PROTECT	Prevents/enables the deletion of control settings; when protected, stored settings cannot be deleted but waveforms stored with them can
6,7 Factory troubleshooting aids	
9 INSTALLED OPTIONS DISPLAY	Lists installed options on screen
5 INST DIAGNOSTICS /ADJUSTMENTS	
0,1,3,4,6 Various factory troubleshooting aids	
2 MANUAL ADJUSTMENTS	
2 DISPLAY STORAGE CAL	Used with back panel controls to adjust trace alignment
5 SERVICE NORMALIZATIONS	
0 FREQUENCY NORM'ZATIONS 1 REFERENCE NORM'ZATIONS 2 AMPLITUDE NORM'ZATIONS 3 TRKNG GEN NORM'ZATION ⁵	0-2 are used (with external signals or equipment in some cases) to calibrate the 2711's internal parameters; item 3 normalizes the tracking generator
4 NORMALIZATION VALUES	Displays normalization parameters
5 PRINT ALL NORM VALUES ⁴	Sends normalization parameters to printer
6 NORM DEBUG TO PRINTER ⁴	Sends messages during normalization to printer
7 SERVICE REQUEST ⁴	Generates an SRQ for testing purposes
9 MORE	
0 PRINT READOUTS	Sends on-screen readouts to printer

⁴ Requires Option 03 (GPIB) or 08 (RS-232).⁵ Requires Option 04 (Tracking Generator).

Table 4-3. The Marker/Frequency (MKR/FREQ) Menu.



0 THRESHOLD	Enables keypad entry of signal ampl'd difference for marker and limit detector functions
1 PROGRMD TUNING INC 0 CENTER FREQ 1 MARKER FREQ 2 KEYPAD-ENTERED INC 3 KEYPAD ENTRY 4 RETURN TO AUTO	Selecting PROGRMD TUNING INC determines whether knob increment equals center freq, current marker freq, or keypad entered freq; 4 returns to AUTO selection of tuning increment
2 KNOB FUNCTION 0 FREQUENCY 1 MARKER 2 VIDEO LINE ¹	Toggles knob function from frequency to marker control; if TV LINE trigger is active, also enables knob selection of line; if tracking generator (Option 04) is active, can select knob control
3 MARKER TO REFERENCE LEVEL	Changes reference level to the current amplitude of the marker (if active)
4 MOVE MARKER TO NEXT PEAK	Moves marker to next higher or next lower spectral peak
5 TRANSPOSE MARKERS	Interchanges fixed and moveable markers
6 MARKER START/STOP	Makes the start and stop frequencies equal to the current marker positions
7 FREQUENCY START/STOP 0 FREQ START ENTRY 1 FREQ STOP ENTRY	Enables keypad entry of display start and stop frequencies
8 TUNING INCREMENT	Selects between AUTO, PROGRMD, & TABULAR tuning increments

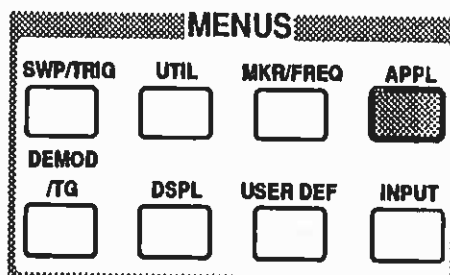
¹ Requires Option 10 (Video Monitor).

Table 4-3. The Marker/Frequency (MKR/FREQ) Menu (Continued).

9 SETUP TABLE	
0 CENTER/START FREQ	Toggles knob control between start and center frequency
1 COUNTER RESOLN² 0 COUNTER OFF WHEN TRKG 1 1 HZ 2 1 KHZ	Turns off counter readout in signal track mode and sets counter resolution to 1 Hz or 1 kHz
2 TABULAR TUNING TABLES 0 : 9	Selects the tuning increment from a list of domestic and foreign broadcast and cable TV frequency standards
3 FREQ OFFSET	Enables keypad entry of a value by which displayed center frequency is offset, but frequency is not actually changed and counter reads correctly; intended for use with frequency shifting devices such as down-converters
4 FREQ OFFSET MODE	Determines whether FREQ OFFSET is ON PLUS, ON MINUS, or OFF (offset value must be entered for ON MINUS to appear)

² Requires Option 02 (Frequency Counter).

Table 4-4. The Applications (APPL) Menu.

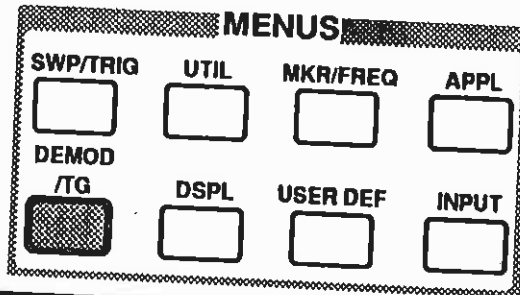


0 BANDWIDTH MODE	Determines BW of a spectral peak at points a designated number of dB down
1 CARRIER TO NOISE	Measures carrier-to-noise ratio at points indicated by markers
2 NOISE NORMALIZED	Measures noise in normalized bandwidth at point indicated by marker
3 SIGNAL SEARCH MENU	Enables entry of signal search parameters
0 BEGIN FREQ	Frequency at which search begins
1 END FREQ	Frequency at which search ends
2 START TEST	Initiates automated signal search
3 DISPLAY RESULTS	Sends results to printer or screen; use UTIL/4/2 to select which one
4 OCCUPIED BW	Determines the bandwidth that contains a specified % of the signal energy
7 FM DEVIATION MODE	Displays instantaneous FM deviation vertically at 10, 5, or 1 kHz/div
9 SETUP TABLE	Enables keypad entry of dB down for bandwidth mode, normalized bandwidth for noise & C/N measurements, and the energy percentage for occupied BW measurements
0 DB DOWN OF BW MODE	
1 NORM BW FOR C/N	
2 NOISE NORM'D BW	
3 PERCENT OCCUPIED BW	

NOTE

All items except SIGNAL SEARCH MENU are toggles that switch the indicated mode on and off.

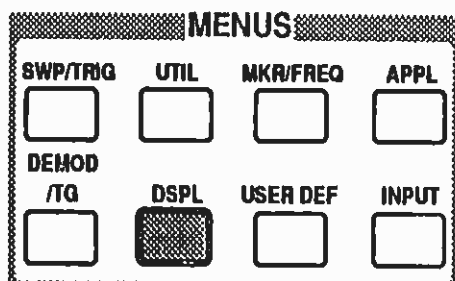
Table 4-5. The Demodulator/Tracking Generator (DEMOD/TG) Menu.



0 OFF	Connects output of AM demodulator, FM demodulator, both, or neither (OFF) to internal speaker and headphone jack; LEVEL knob controls volume
1 AM DEMODULATOR	
2 FM DEMODULATOR	
3 BROADCAST (AM) VIDEO¹ SATELLITE (FM) VIDEO	Indicates selected video detect mode and turns it on and off
4 TRACKING GENERATOR²	Turns the optional TG on and off
5 TG FIXED LEVEL²	Enables keypad entry of TG output level (-48 to 0 dBm)
6 TG VARIABLE LEVEL²	Enables LEVEL control to vary TG output level about ± 2 dB (uncalibrated)
7 TG TRACKING²	Enables FREQ/MKRS knob to vary TG tracking -5 to +60 kHz
8 TG EXT ATTEN/AMPL¹⁰	Enables keypad entry of a correction for external amplifier or attenuator at TG output, and turns it on and off; follow on-screen prompts
9 VIDEO MONITOR SETUP¹	
0 VIDEO DETECT MODE	Selects BROADCAST (AM) or SATELLITE (FM) video detection; does not work with scrambled signals
1 SYNC POLARITY 2 VIDEO POLARITY	Toggles sync pulse and video signal polarity between positive and negative

¹ Requires Option 10 (Video Monitor).² Requires Option 04 (Tracking Generator).

Table 4-6. The Display (DSPL) Menu.

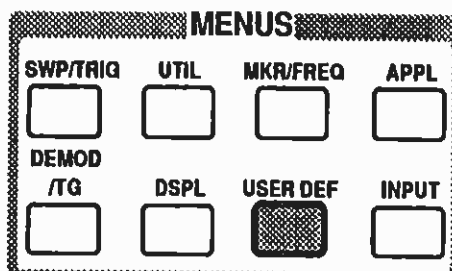


0 DIGITAL/ANALOG	Toggles between all display registers off (analog) and (digital) display register configuration prior to selecting analog
1 ENSEMBLE AVERAGING	
1 INITIATE AVERAGING	Starts averaging process
2 TERMINATE AVERAGING	Ends averaging process
3 MAX	Finds the average maximum, minimum, or max/min spectrum values. MEAN finds the average half way between the max & min points
4 MEAN	
5 MIN	
6 MAX/MIN	
7 NUMBER OF AVERAGES	Averages 1 to 1024 traces or selects continuous averaging
8 SAVE RESULTS IN DISPLAY	Toggles among display registers A, B, and C; Indicated register stores average
2 B,C MINUS A	Subtracts contents of A register from B or C registers if they are active
3 B,C MINUS A OFFSET TO	Offsets result of subtraction to top or center of screen (0 difference equals reference level or mid-screen)
4 ACQUISITION MODE	Toggles between peak & max/min spectral display
5 TITLE MODE	Enables entry of on-screen title & information; turns title and information display on & off

Table 4-6. The Display (DSPL) Menu (Continued).

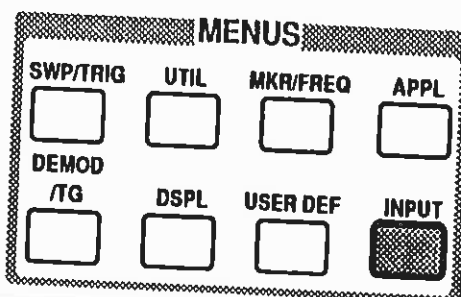
6 GRATICULE ILLUMINATION	Turns graticule light on and off
7 DISPLAY 8 DISPLAY LINE	Toggles between INT and EXT signal source, and indicates mode (AM or FM) when INT is selected
8 DISPLAY LINE	Controls display line and limit detector
1 ON/OFF	Toggles display line (horizontal line at specified amplitude) on and off
2 VALUE ENTRY	Enables keypad entry of display line amplitude
3 DISPLAY LINE TO MARKER	Sets display line amplitude to current marker amplitude
4 LIMIT DETECTOR	Sounds audible alarm (limit detector) if a) signal is above line b) signal is below line or c) signal is below line but above threshold. Set using [MKR/FREQ] [0]
9 MIN HOLD IN WFM nn	Accumulates minimum value of spectrum and enables selection of register in which to store result

Table 4-7. User Definable (USER DEF) Menu.



0 program 0 :	User-defined programs (UDP's) of key-stroke sequences; recall and execute by pressing [USER DEF]/ [program #]
8 program 8	
9 USER DEF PROG UTILITIES	Firmware utilities used to create UDP's
0 ACQUIRE/EXIT KEY STROKES	Used to begin acquiring keystrokes or to exit acquire mode without storing UDP
1 TITLE EDIT	Used to create/modify name of UDP
2 WAIT FOR END OF SWEEP	Used as keystroke in UDP to delay UDP until sweep finishes; displays "WAIT FOR END OF SWEEP"; needed by functions utilizing end-of-sweep processing (count, cent meas, etc.)
3 DISPLAY MESSAGE	Used to create/delete messages for on-screen display during UDP execution
4 PAUSE FOR "USER DEF" KEY	Used as a keystroke in UDP's to generate "PRESS USER DEF KEY TO CONTINUE" message and halt program execution until [USER DEF] is pressed
5 CONTINUOUS EXECUTION	When selected, causes subsequently chosen UDP to repeat continuously
6 STORE	Stores the UDP currently being edited in location 0-8; location must be empty before UDP can be stored; if UDP is named, name appears next to number
7 DELETE	Deletes UDP's by number
8 PROTECT	Protects stored UDP's by number from deletion; # indicates protected UDP

Table 4-8. The Input (INPUT) Menu.



1 PREAMP	Toggles built-in preamp on and off
2 50 OHM DBM/75 OHM DBMV	Computes conversion factors for switching between 50 W source/dBm units and 75 W source/dBmV units; scales display
3 REF LEVEL UNIT 0 DBM 1 DBMV 2 DBV 3 DBUV 4 DBUW 5 DBUV/M IN WFM X 9 DBUV/M SETUP	Selects Indicated reference unit: milliwatt reference millivolt reference volt reference microvolt reference microwatt reference microvolt per meter reference; use [DSPL] to select display register Enables entry of antenna factors and test distances
4 1ST MXR INPUT LVL	Enables keypad entry of first mixer input amplitude that deflects display to the reference level
5 RF ATTENUATION	Enables keypad entry or AUTO selection of RF attenuation
6 EXTERNAL ATTEN/AMPL 0 ON/OFF 1 ATTEN/AMPL ENTRY	Signifies whether external attenuation or amplification is present and enables keypad entry of amount
9 CAL SIGNAL @100MHZ -30DBM	Toggles built-in calibrator on and off

Section 5 — Dedicated Controls

Replace this page with the tab divider of the same name.

SECTION 5

DEDICATED CONTROLS

This chapter describes in detail the hard-wired or dedicated controls of the 2711. All of the controls are on the front panel except for the trace alignment controls, which are on the back. You will learn to use the controls to effectively measure signal spectra. We look first at the controls most fundamental to spectrum analysis.

NOTE

*During this section, perform the operations that are highlighted with **bold text**.*

FUNDAMENTAL OPERATIONS

Earlier you measured the amplitude and frequency of a continuous narrow-band signal (the calibration signal) using only three controls. In this section you will repeat the initial measurement, but this time you will examine more closely the **FREQUENCY**, **SPAN/DIV**, **REF LEVEL** and associated controls contained in the gray-colored central function block¹. These controls are most fundamental to spectrum analyzer operation. You can even perform the majority of spectral measurements with only these controls if you choose.

To begin, set the Spectrum Analyzer controls to the values shown in the settings box at the top of the next page. **Press [UTIL] [1] [1] to restore the factory defaults and then [INPUT] [9] to turn on the calibration signal.**

¹ You can also use the Utility Menu to reset the frequency, span, and reference level (see *Menu-Entered Control Settings* under the *UTIL* discussion in section 6).

900.0MHZ	(AUTO SWEEP)	ATTN 50DB
20.0DBM		VF WIDE
180MHZ/ MAX		10 DB/
5MHZ RBW (AUTO)	CALIBRATOR	

Press [FREQUENCY] [4] [0] [0] [X] to set the analyzer center frequency to 400 MHz. Remember that in MAX SPAN the marker changes position and not the frequency at the screen center. Press the REF LEVEL [\uparrow] key three times to reduce the reference level to -10.0 dBm.



The SPAN/DIV keys are used to change the frequency span represented by one horizontal division on the screen. The arrow keys directly increase or decrease the span per division, and [SPAN/DIV] enables you to enter the span per division directly from the keypad (immediate entry mode).

Beginning with maximum span, press:

[\downarrow]

to the right of [SPAN/DIV] several times to decrease the span/div to 20 MHz.² Note how the instrument "zooms in" on the spectral display. Now press:

[\uparrow]

until the span/div increases to 180 MHz. Watch the spectral display "zoom out" just as though it was moving away from you.

These keys perform inverse functions. The upward-pointing arrow increases the span/div, compressing or squeezing the spectrum together. The downward-pointing arrow decreases the span/div and expands or stretches the spectrum. The arrow keys are active whenever the spectral display mode is active.

² If you request a narrow span before the 2711 is completely warmed up, you may get a NORMALIZATION SUGGESTED message. This message should not appear after the analyzer warms up.

Experiment by pressing each arrow key until the span/div no longer changes. You will notice two characteristics of the 2711:

- Span/div changes in a 1-2-5 sequence between 10 kHz and 100 MHz, plus 180 MHz/div in maximum span.
- Resolution bandwidth changes automatically as the span changes (later you will learn how this can be changed).

The preset span/div values are sufficient for most of your measurement needs. However, other spans/div can also be specified to the nearest tenth of a unit.

Press [SPAN/DIV] to place span in Immediate entry mode so an arbitrary value may be entered. Notice that the message SPAN appears at left center of the screen.

The SPAN Indicator indicates that you can enter the span/div directly from the keypad. This is done by keying in a permissible value followed by an appropriate terminator key. Any value from 10 kHz/div to 180 MHz/div is acceptable. You may enter up to 25 characters, but the 2711 rounds and stores the value to three decimal points. In the spectral display, the value is shown rounded to one decimal point (to see the stored value, press [UTIL] [2]).

For instance, to set the span/division to 33.3 MHz, press:

[3] [3] [.] [3] [X]

The numbers you type appear on screen to the right of SPAN. If you make a mistake, it may be corrected any time before [MHz] is pressed. To correct mistakes, repeatedly press [BKSP] (the backspace key) until the incorrect number disappears, then type the correct value.

A terminator key ([W], [X], [Y], [Z]) determines the units and enters the data. The [X] key can represent units of MHz, mSEC, or mV. Because the immediate span/div entry mode requires a frequency, the instrument correctly interprets the currently displayed value as 33.3 MHz when you press [X]. If a time or voltage unit had been required, the 2711 would have interpreted your entry as 33.3 mSEC.

or 33.3 mV, respectively, when you pressed [X]. Had you wanted the entry to represent a span/div of 33.3 kHz, you would have pressed [Y] instead of [X].

Press [↓]. The span/div changes to 20 MHz; the nearest span/div value in the downward direction in the normal 1-2-5 sequence. Had you pressed [↑], the span/div would have changed to 50 MHz; the nearest value in the upward direction. The span readout now indicates 20MHz/ and the 4th harmonic of the calibration signal is at the center frequency of 400MHz.

MAX



There is often a need, such as when connecting new signals to the RF input, to view the entire input frequency range of the instrument. In this mode, the instrument is in MAX SPAN. A dedicated front panel-key is provided to conveniently enter and exit this mode.

Press [MAX] to obtain the largest span available on the 2711. The span/div readout now indicates 180 MHz/ MAX. Press [MAX] a second time to return to 20 MHz/.

Many of the keys are toggle-action. The ability to undo an action by pushing the same button that carried out the action is typical. [MAX] is a toggle-action key taking you from the current span/div to 180 MHz/div and back again.

ZERO

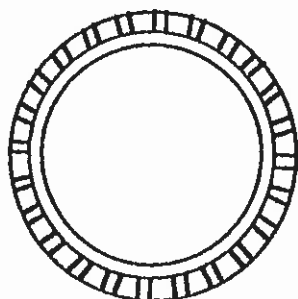


Set the center frequency to 100 MHz ([FREQ] [1] [0] [0] [X]) and notice that the calibration signal is centered in the display.

Press [ZERO]. The signal is a straight, horizontal line. In zero span mode the analyzer remains at a fixed frequency. What you see is the variation in time of the signal power coming through the resolution bandwidth filter at that frequency. Since the calibration signal has constant amplitude, the display is constant. **Slowly increase the center frequency by turning the FREQ/MKRS knob.** The noise generated internally by the analyzer has a time-varying random amplitude. You will notice the signal amplitude decrease and the noise increase as you tune away from the calibration signal.

In the zero span mode, the instrument does not sweep the frequency spectrum. Rather, the local oscillator remains at a fixed frequency so that the resolution bandwidth filter brackets the designated center frequency. Because the display screen is still swept, the span readout indicates sweep speed (time per division rather than frequency per division). The word ZSPAN follows the sweep speed to denote zero span operation. In a sense, your spectrum analyzer is now operating like an oscilloscope. [ZERO] is another toggle-action key. Press the [ZERO] key again to return to 20 MHz/div span.

FREQ/MKRS



FREQUENCY



Press [SPAN/DIV] [1] [0] [0] [X] to change the span to 100 MHz/. Turn the FREQ/MKRS knob a few clicks clockwise. In this span/div setting, each click of the knob increases the center frequency by 2.0 MHz.

Turn the knob counter-clockwise and the center frequency decreases by the same amount. Now reduce the span to 20 MHz/ ([SPAN] [2] [0] [X]). Again turn the FREQ/MKRS knob a few clicks clockwise. The spectral display appears to move sideways at the same rate as it originally did. However, it is now moving only 0.4 MHz per click. This visual behavior is called *constant rate tuning*. It occurs because the knob normally changes the center frequency at 0.02 of the span/div per click.³ Obviously, it would take a great many clicks to change the frequency by 100 MHz at 20 MHz/div (250, to be exact).

The knob remains active whenever spectral display mode is implemented.

Press [↑] to the right of [FREQUENCY]. The frequency changes by 20 MHz. It would take only five presses of the arrow key to change the frequency by 100 MHz — a big improvement.

³ In MAX SPAN the indicated frequency changes alternately by 3 or 4 MHz, and as a percent of the Resolution Bandwidth in ZERO SPAN. *Selecting the Tuning Increment* in section 6 teaches you how you can change the tuning rate.

Normally ⁴ the frequency arrow keys change the frequency by 50 times the knob click; an amount equal to the span/div setting.

Change the span/div to 100 MHz ([SPAN/DIV] [1] [0] [0] [X]).
Now press [↓] adjacent to [FREQUENCY]. The frequency changes by 100 MHz x (50 x (.02 x 100 MHz)). At large spans/div the arrow keys can change the frequency very rapidly.

The arrow keys perform inverse functions. The upward-pointing arrow increases the center or start frequency, whereas the downward-pointing arrow lowers it. The keys remain active whenever the 2711 is in spectral display mode.

For very large frequency changes or to preset a known center or start frequency, direct entry mode is faster. **To set the center or start frequency to a predetermined value, press [FREQUENCY] to place the center or start frequency in immediate entry mode. Notice that the message FREQ has appeared at left center of the screen.**

The FREQ message indicates that you can enter the center frequency directly from the keypad (immediate entry mode). This is done by keying in a permissible value followed by an appropriate terminator key. You can enter any value from 0 Hz to 1.8 GHz, but the instrument's low-frequency specification is 9 kHz. Your entry may contain up to 25 characters, but regardless of how many you enter, the 2711 attempts to control frequency to the nearest Hertz and reads out the frequency at the top of the left-hand data column to 1% of the span/div.

For instance, to set the center frequency to 1.25 MHz press:

[1] [.] [2] [5] [X]

The numbers you type appear on screen to the right of FREQ. If you make a mistake, correct it any time prior to pressing [MHz] by repeatedly pressing [BKSP] (the backspace key) until the incorrect number disappears, and then type the correct value.

A terminator key ([W], [X], [Y], [Z]) determines the units and enters the data. The [X] key can represent units of MHz, mSEC, or mV.

⁴ In AUTO tuning increment mode. In other modes, the arrow keys change the frequency by the designated tuning increment. See *Selecting the Tuning Increment* in section 6.

Because the immediate frequency entry mode requires a frequency, the instrument interprets the currently displayed value as 1.25 MHz when you press [X]. If a time or voltage unit had been required, the entry would have been interpreted as 1.25 mSEC or 1.25 mV, respectively, when you pressed [X]⁵. Had you wanted the entry to represent a frequency of 1.25 GHz, you would have pressed [W] instead of [X].

Now use the direct entry method to set the center frequency to 100 MHz ([FREQUENCY] [1] [0] [0] [X]).

REF LEVEL



Next you will review reference level adjustment.

Notice the height of the signal peak and then press [↓] to the right of [REF LEVEL].

The signal peak appears to increase 10 dB when you press the key, but this is a bit deceptive. Actually, the calibration signal amplitude does not change when you change the reference level. Instead, the reference level *decreases* (changes in the direction indicated by the arrow key) to -20 dBm and the RF attenuation changes to 10 dB. The signal only appears larger because the reference level has been lowered 10 dB and now represents a signal level of -20 dBm, 10 dB (one division) greater than the calibration signal.

Reduce the on-screen signal height one division by pressing [↑] adjacent to [REF LEVEL].

The reference level readout *increases*⁶ 10 dB to -10 dBm (again changes in the direction indicated by the arrow) and RF attenuation changes to 20 dB. The signal peak drops one division, but its amplitude is still -30.0 dBm.

⁵ However, neither is a permissible value, and your entry would have been rounded to the nearest allowable value.

⁶ Remember that you often deal with negative numbers when setting the reference level; -10 dBm is *larger* than -20 dBm.

The arrow keys perform inverse functions. The upward-pointing arrow increases the reference level whereas the downward-pointing arrow lowers it. The keys remain active whenever the 2711 is in spectral display mode.

NOTE

The direction of the arrows always represents the direction of change of the instrument setting (up arrow increases the reference level). This results in an inverse relationship with the displayed signal height (up arrow lowers displayed signal height).

As with frequency and span/div, you can directly enter the reference level from the KEYPAD. This feature is especially handy when you have a good estimate ahead of time of what the signal amplitude is, or when you are simply interested in how much below a given amplitude a particular signal is. For instance, you might want to preset the reference level to -33.9 dBm ($+13$ dBmV — later you will learn to change reference level units) to examine cable TV signals at a customer drop.

Press [REF LEVEL]. This places the reference level in immediate entry mode to set the reference level to a predetermined value. Notice that the message REFL has appeared at left center of the screen. The REFL message indicates that you can enter the reference level directly from the KEYPAD. This is done by entering a permissible value followed by an appropriate terminator key. You can enter any value from -70 to $+20$ dBm (or the equivalent in other units). You can enter up to 25 characters, but regardless of how many you enter, the instrument rounds and displays the reference level to a tenth of a dB.

Set the reference level to -27.5 dBm by pressing:

[2] [7] [-] [5] [Z]

The numbers you type appear on screen to the right of REFL. If you make a mistake, it may be corrected any time before [Z] is pressed. To make a correction repeatedly press [BKSP] until the incorrect number disappears, then type the correct value.

Pressing a terminator key (only [Y] or [Z] in this case) determines the units. The [Z] key can represent units of Hz or -dBx. Because the immediate reference level entry mode requires decibels, and because the reference level unit is the dBm, the instrument correctly interprets the currently displayed value as -27.5 dBm when you press [Z]. If the currently selected reference level units had been dBmV or dBW, the 2711 would have interpreted your entry as such when you pressed [Z]. If a frequency unit had been required, the entry would have interpreted as 27.5 Hz when you pressed [Z]. Had you wanted to enter a positive reference level, you would have pressed [Y] for +dBx. The [W] or [X] terminator keys are ignored in this mode because they do not represent acceptable reference level units.

REF LVL STEP



The calibration signal peak is now less than one division below the reference level. Next you will move it even closer to the top of the screen.

Press [REF LVL STEP].

Nothing happened on screen, but the red LED next to the key lit. The LED is telling you that the rate at which the reference level arrow keys change the on-screen signal height and reference level is now 1 dB per press rather than 10 dB. **Press [↑] three times.** The signal peak rises until it is just above the reference level and the readout indicates -30.5 dBm. You cannot get the signal peak closer to the reference level without entering a new reference level in the immediate mode.

Press [↑] ten times and watch the signal peak drop to almost one division below the reference level. The reference level readout should indicate -20.5 dBm.

[REF LVL STEP] is another toggle-action key. **Press [REF LVL STEP] again.** The LED turns off indicating the reference level is back in 10 dB per press mode. **Press the reference level [↑] key and confirm that the reference level returns to -30.5 dBm.**

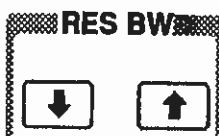
Reset the reference level to -10 dBm ([REF LEVEL] [1] [0] [Z]).

ENHANCED VERSATILITY

In the preceding subsection you learned about the fundamental controls. This subsection describes how the remaining controls enhance your ability to make accurate spectral measurements easily and conveniently.

- Control the resolution bandwidth, vertical scale factor, and sweep speed.
- Use display storage and marker control to quickly measure signal amplitude and frequency with maximum accuracy.
- Make direct spectral comparisons and, with non-volatile RAM (NVRAM), save important results for future reference.

100.0MHZ	(AUTO SWEEP)	ATTN 20DB
-10.0DBM		VF WIDE
20.0MHZ/		10 DB/
5MHZ RBW (AUTO)	CALIBRATOR	



Thus far, we have ignored the RES BW function block. It has been left in AUTO mode that enables you to make measurements without worrying about where the resolution bandwidth is set, but there are circumstances in which you will want to control the resolution

BW yourself. For instance, if you observe the time domain representation of a TV video signal using zero span, you will want to use the 5 MHz (maximum bandwidth) filter to ensure enough bandwidth for the video signal. In other cases, you may wish to select a very narrow resolution bandwidth in order to resolve signal sidebands or intermodulation distortion products. The RES BW arrow keys enable you to select resolution bandwidths of 3 kHz, 30 kHz, 300 kHz, and 5 MHz.

How much frequency separation is required before signals appear as separate peaks on the display? The specific answer depends on several factors including the filters, bandwidths, signal levels, and other factors, but two basic rules apply.

- If the signal amplitudes differ by less than 3 dB, they are resolved when their frequency separation equals the resolution bandwidth.
- For signals more widely separated in amplitude and frequency, let A be the amplitude difference in dB. Then:

$$F = \left(1 + \frac{A}{22} \right) \times \text{resolution BW}$$

where F is the required frequency separation. This rule is based on the fact that the 2711's 60 dB filter bandwidths tend to be about 7 times the 6 dB bandwidth and assumes the filter roll-off is approximately linear in dB. Using this condition, if the signals differ in amplitude by 30 dB, A, then they require a frequency separation of about 2.4 x resolution BW.

Set the span to 2.0 MHz/ ([SPAN/DIV] [2] [X]). The resolution bandwidth readout indicates 300 kHz. Observe what happens if you change the resolution bandwidth.

In the RES BW function block, press [↑].

The LED below the RES BW [AUTO] key turned off indicating that the resolution bandwidth is no longer being automatically selected, and the resolution bandwidth readout indicates 5 MHz. In addition, the calibration signal now appears to be 5 MHz wide. Theoretically, the calibration signal should be infinitely narrow — a spike at 100 MHz. To understand what has happened, you must recall the process going on within the analyzer. It is sweeping a narrow-band signal (the calibration signal) past a broadband filter (the 5 MHz resolution filter). As the signal is moved past the filter, it maps the shape of the resolution filter. What you see is the spectral shape of the filter rather than that of the calibration signal. The lesson is that, on unmodulated signals, a resolution bandwidth filter that is too wide can artificially broaden the displayed spectrum (although the signal peak remains accurate).

You may have also noticed the noise floor increase of approximately 12 dB as you switched from 300 kHz to 5 MHz resolution bandwidth. The noise coming through a filter is proportional to the filter bandwidth. For white noise at the Spectrum Analyzer input, the difference in noise power coming through two resolution BW filters with bandwidths RBW_1 and RBW_2 is:

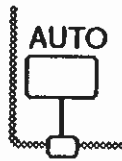
$$\text{Noise Difference (dB)} = 10 \text{ Log } \left(\frac{RBW_1}{RBW_2} \right)$$

In this case;

$$10 \text{ Log } \left(\frac{5 \text{ MHz}}{300 \text{ kHz}} \right) = +12 \text{ dB}$$

more noise passes through a 5 MHz filter than through a 300 kHz filter.

Reduce the resolution BW by repeatedly pressing [↓] in the RES BW function block until the on-screen readout indicates 3 kHz. You hear a high level beep and see the message UNCAL (if you do not hear a beep, check that the audio alert is set to ERROR ONLY or BOTH — see *The Audio Alert* in section 6). The instrument is now sweeping the calibration signal past the resolution filter too quickly for the filter output to rise to its steady-state value before the signal is no longer present at the filter input. This can result in low amplitude and skewed frequency readings. Resolution bandwidths that are too narrow can result in incorrect amplitude and skewed frequency measurements. Ultimate measurement accuracy is at risk when the UNCAL message is present.

RES BW

Pressing the [AUTO] key in the RES BW function block toggles between operator and automatic selection of the resolution bandwidth. When the resolution bandwidth is being selected by the 2711, the LED below the [AUTO] key is lit.

Press [AUTO] to place the resolution BW in automatic mode. The red LED will be illuminated. You can disable AUTO mode by pressing a RES BW arrow key or by pressing [AUTO].

Set the span/div to 50 MHz ([SPAN/DIV] [5] [0] [X]). Note the indicated resolution bandwidth and, in the RES BW function block, press [↓]. The LED has gone out and the resolution bandwidth is 300 kHz.

Press [AUTO]. The LED comes back on and the resolution bandwidth has switched back to 5 MHz.

Press [AUTO] again. The LED goes out but the resolution bandwidth is still 5 MHz. Toggling out of AUTO mode with the [AUTO] key maintains the automatically selected resolution bandwidth until you change it with a RES BW arrow key.

700.0MHZ	(AUTO SWEEP)	ATTN 20DB
-10.0DBM		VF WIDE
50.0MHZ/		10 DB/
5MHZ RBW (AUTO)	CALIBRATOR	

RES BW

A *video filter* is a post-detection filter (sometimes referred to as a *noise-averaging filter*) used to reduce noise in the displayed spectrum to its average value, making low-level signals more easily detectable.

Normally, the 2711 uses a video filter about as wide as the resolution bandwidth. This limits post-detection noise, but does not significantly alter the displayed amplitude of narrow-band signals. However, when measuring very wide-band or pulse-like signals, you may wish to use a wider filter than that automatically selected by the 2711. See *Menu-Entered Control Settings* in section 6.

The video filter width is indicated in the on-screen readouts by

VF (bandwidth)

where (bandwidth) is equal to the bandwidth of the video filter being used except in the case of the 5 MHz filter. Then

VF WIDE

is substituted. In this case, the filter consists of the natural lowpass characteristics of the circuitry following the detector. When you press the [VID FLTR] key, the 2711 automatically selects a narrower video filter bandwidth that is approximately 1/100 of the resolution bandwidth (later you will learn how to specify a particular filter bandwidth via the UTIL Menu). The narrow video filter dramatically reduces the noise and enhances the visibility of narrow-band signals. Care must be taken, though, because it will also reduce the indicated amplitudes of wide band signals such as video modulation and short duration pulses.

To see the video filter work, ensure that the 2711 is set as in the preceding settings box. Signal peaks at 700, 800, and 900 MHz are probably not visible.

Now press [VID FLTR]. The red LED below the key comes on indicating that a narrow video filter is being used, and the bandwidth of the filter is indicated on screen.

Notice how much the noise has been reduced in the lower portion of the spectral display. By filtering the noise, it is sometimes possible to reveal low-level signals that were in the noise. This is the primary reason for using a video filter. Now you can see signal peaks at 700, 800, and 900 MHz (the seventh, eighth, and ninth harmonics of the calibration signal). There are small differences from instrument to instrument, but you should be able to spot these peaks above the noise.

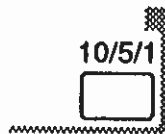
Video filtering works well for continuous wave and other narrow-band signals. However, when examining pulsed or wide-band signals such as television video (especially the sync pulses), a video filter may prevent you from accurately seeing signal characteristics in much the same way that using a too-narrow resolution bandwidth does.

Although it may not have been apparent, the sweep speed also decreased in order to accommodate the longer time constant of the video filter. Just as with the resolution bandwidth filter, a signal needs more time to reach its peak amplitude when propagating through a narrow video filter.

Turn the video filter off by pressing [VID FLTR] again.

100.0MHZ	(AUTO SWEEP)	ATTN 6DB
-25.0DBM		VF WIDE
20.0MHZ/		10 DB/
5MHZ RBW (AUTO)	CALIBRATOR	

VERT SCALE



The VERT SCALE function block contains a three-way toggle key labeled [10/5/1]. This label expresses the three logarithmic vertical scale factors available on the 2711: 10, 5 and 1 decibels per major vertical division.

Press this key to advance the vertical scale factor through the three values in a 10 dB-5 dB-1 dB-10 dB sequence.

Press [10/5/1]. Two things happen. First, the signal peak is now one division down from the reference level. Second, the vertical scale factor on-screen readout now indicates 5DB/. The noise also seems to have disappeared. The signal to noise difference is the same, but the scale factor change has moved the noise below the bottom of the screen.

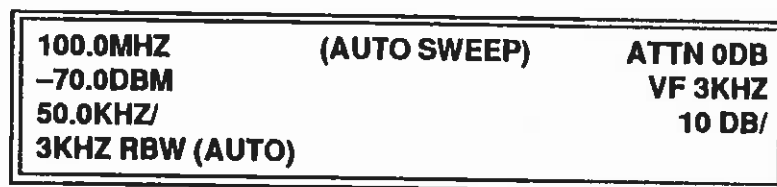
Again press [10/5/1]. The signal peak is five divisions below the top graticule and the readout indicates 1DB/. The primary use for this feature is to more accurately read displayed signal peaks. **Press the [10/5/1] key once again to restore the 10DB/ setting.**



The second key in the VERT SCALE function block is also toggle-action. It converts the vertical scale from logarithmic to linear and back again.

With the calibration signal centered and the reference level set to -25 dBm (REF LEVEL) [2] [5] [Z]), press [LIN]. The vertical scale readout now indicates 1.57MV/. When LIN mode is initially selected, the 2711 converts the vertical scale such that the bottom graticule line is zero volts and the reference level is converted from dB's to voltage. The display is similar to what appears on an oscilloscope. Thereafter, the REF LEVEL arrow keys change the scale factor in a 1-2-5 sequence. Consequently, the reference level changes by either 6 or 8 dB when changing scale factors. If the 1 dB reference level step size is selected while in LIN mode, the arrow keys change the scale factor at a rate of about 0.02 division per step and the corresponding reference level changes about 0.2 dB.

Experiment with the scale factor if you wish, then press [LIN] to return to logarithmic mode. When switching back to logarithmic from linear, the last selected log scale is implemented.



The SWEEP function block controls the sweep rate and single sweep feature (other trigger modes are discussed in section 6 under *SWP/TRIG*). The rate at which the CRT beam sweeps across the screen is known as the sweep rate. It is also the rate at which the displayed spectrum is swept.

Normally, sweep rate is automatically selected by the 2711. However, in some cases, such as when viewing the time domain representation of a signal in zero span, you may want to vary the sweep rate for a better view of the signal.

Ensure the calibrator is turned off (UTIL) [9]) and press [ZERO SPAN] to enter zero span mode.

The currently selected sweep rate is displayed on screen as the horizontal scale factor in zero span mode and has units of time/division (in spectral mode. The sweep rate is viewed by pressing [SWP/TRIG]). The sweep rate readout indicates 100MS/ZSPAN (100 msec/div in zero span). **Now press [↓].** The LED below [AUTO] in the SWEEP function block turns off indicating the sweep rate is no longer being selected automatically.

Continue to press [↓] until the sweep rate readout changes to 1MS/ZSPAN. The SWEEP down arrow key decreases the sweep rate in a 1-2-5 sequence. Faster sweep rates are possible (1μsec/div) with display storage disabled.

Now press [↑] several times. The noise is compressed to a grass-like appearance and the indicated sweep rate increases. The SWEEP up arrow key increases the sweep rate in a 1-2-5 sequence.

The ↓ and ↑ keys perform reciprocal actions; they increase or decrease the time required to sweep one division. Pressing either key removes the 2711 from automatic sweep rate selection mode, and the ↑ or ↓ keys thereafter function like the sweep rate selector on a conventional oscilloscope.

NOTE

Because sweep rate is the inverse of sweep speed, decreasing sweep rate increases sweep speed.

Use the arrow keys to reset the sweep rate to 100 msec/div. Press [SPAN/DIV] [5] [0] [Y] to set the span/div to 50 kHz, [REF LEVEL] [1] [0] [Z] to set the reference level to -10 dBm, and [UTIL] [9] to turn on the calibrator.

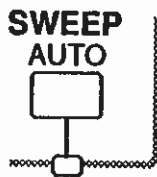
Reduce the time/div by repeatedly pressing [↓].

Again you hear a beep and the message UNCAL appears.

Continue to increase the sweep speed and notice the signal peak decrease and shift to the right.

This condition is achieved by sweeping too fast for a given resolution bandwidth and demonstrates how measurement errors can occur. You are sweeping the resolution filter so fast that its output does not have time to reach steady-state. **Press [ZERO SPAN].** The UNCAL message disappears because in zero span mode the filter is not being swept at all.

Press the arrow keys to set the sweep speed to 1 msec/div.



The [AUTO] key in the SWEEP function block serves two purposes. First, it is used in much the same way as the [AUTO] key in the RES BW function block, as a toggle-action key that switches between automatic and manual selection of sweep rate. When AUTO sweep rate selection is active, the sweep rate selected by the 2711 depends on the span/div, resolution bandwidth, and video filter in use. Second, pressing the SWEEP [AUTO] key when in single sweep mode exits from that mode.

Continuing with the example above, press [ZERO] to exit zero span mode. Notice how distorted the calibration signal is and then press [AUTO] in the SWEEP function block.

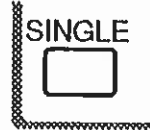
The LED below the key lights indicating sweep rate is being automatically selected by the instrument. The sweep rate is now 100 msec/division, the UNCAL message has disappeared, and the calibration signal is correctly displayed as -30 dBm at 100 MHz.

Again press [AUTO] in the SWEEP function block.

The LED goes out, but the display doesn't change. Toggling out of AUTO mode maintains the automatically selected rate until you change it with the ↑ or ↓ keys.

Press [AUTO] to activate AUTO sweep mode.

100.0MHZ	(AUTO SWEEP)	ATTN 20DB
-10.0DBM		VF 300KHZ
1.0MHZ/		10 DB/
300KHZ RBW (AUTO)		

SWEEP

The 2711 is equipped with a single sweep feature. When activated by pressing [SINGLE], the instrument makes only one sweep. Other controls (except [AUTO] in the SWEEP function block) operate normally, and signals at the RF input are treated just as they otherwise would be.

Pressing [AUTO] in the SWEEP function block exits from single sweep mode.

When a sweep begins in single sweep mode depends on how the instrument is triggered. The factory default mode is free run; this should be the current mode of operation.

Press [↓] two times to set the resolution bandwidth to 3 kHz. The sweep now takes two seconds. At mid-sweep, press [SINGLE].

The current sweep is aborted and this message appears on-screen under the right readout column:

SGLSWP MODE

The message means the sweep circuit is in single sweep mode and halted. **Press [SINGLE] again.** This prepares the sweep to begin as soon as it receives the next trigger signal (which occurs automatically in free run mode). A message reading:

SGLSWP ARM

momentarily appears and a single sweep is carried out. You'll see the sweep progress across the screen as a new spectral display is created. When the sweep is completed, the SGLSWP MODE message reappears indicating the sweep is completed and is ready to be re-armed.

If the instrument is not in free run trigger mode (see *SWP/TRIG* in section 6 to change modes), behavior is much the same.

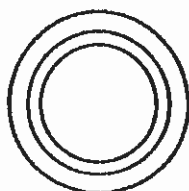
Pressing [SINGLE] causes the current sweep to abort and the SGLSWP MODE message to appear. If you press the key again, the SGLSWP ARM message appears. This time, however, the instrument waits for the first designated trigger signal; when detected, a single sweep begins. After the sweep is complete the SGLSWP MODE message reappears.

You can start a new single sweep in any trigger mode as often as you wish by pressing [SINGLE] after the SGLSWP MODE message appears. However, if you press [SINGLE] too soon, you may exit from single sweep mode.

To exit from single sweep mode, press [AUTO] in the SWEEP function block, or change the sweep rate.

Single sweep mode is useful when you want to prevent a succeeding sweep from overwriting a trace you just acquired, or to capture the characteristics of intermittent signals.

LEVEL



There is a dual-function LEVEL control below the FREQ/MKRS knob. The inner knob controls the triggering level when the 2711 is in internal, external, or line trigger modes. In the other trigger modes it has no effect. The inner knob is also used to control the

TG variable amplitude setting when Option 04 (Tracking Generator) is installed.

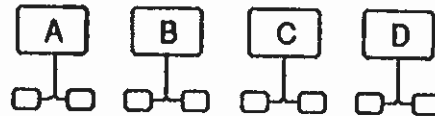
The outer knob controls the volume of the AM and FM demodulators and the horizontal sweep position in manual scan mode. It also controls picture framing when the Option 10 (Video Monitor) is present.

Alternate uses of the LEVEL control are discussed under **DEMOD/TG** and **Manually Scanning** in section 6.

100.0MHZ	(AUTO SWEEP)	ATTN 20DB
-10.0DBM		VF 300KHZ
5.0MHZ/		10 DB/
300KHZ RBW (AUTO)	CALIBRATOR	

DISPLAY STORAGE

The 2711 can display an analog spectrum or up to four sampled and stored digital spectra. A major advantage of display storage



is that it results in a flicker-free sweep. The digital display storage registers are named A, B, C, and D. Their status is controlled by [A], [B], [C], and [D]; the red and green LEDs below each key indicate the status of the corresponding register. When a red LED is lit, the contents of the corresponding register are displayed. The contents of a register can be either the measurement currently being carried out, or previously saved data.

When only a red LED is lit, the contents are the result of the instrument's current activity. Current results are updated from the signal at the RF input during each sweep. The present control settings are used for the update.

When a green LED is lit for the [A], [B], or [C] keys, the corresponding register contains a saved sweep (the on-screen readouts are saved along with the sweep). A saved sweep cannot be erased, modified, or updated without operator interaction.

When the [D] key's green LED is lit, the 2711 is in "waterfall" mode, which is explained later in this section. [A], [B], [C], and [D] are toggle-action keys that activate and deactivate the display registers. A register's contents are displayed only when it is activate (red LED lit), although it still contains saved data as long as its green LED is lit.

Press [C] to turn on the C register (D should already be turned on).

The only change that might be apparent on the display is an increase in trace intensity since the C trace is being displayed on top of the D trace.

Now press [A] and [B] to turn on the A and B registers.

Again, you may notice an increase in intensity, but the shape of the spectral display should not change because each register contains exactly the same information. Deactivate the B, C, and D registers by pressing [B], [C], and [D].

This display is no different than the D register waveform. Verify this by turning on the D register and turning off A (press [D] and then [A]). Verify that this is true of the other registers by alternately switching a new one on and the previous one off.

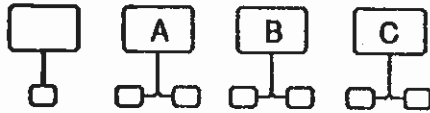
Analog Display

Press the [A], [B], [C], and [D] keys to deactivate all registers. You are now viewing the analog output of the instrument. Note its similarity to the MAX/MIN display. Any time all four red LEDs are turned off, the analog output of the 2711's detector is displayed (see also *Analog/Digital* in the next section). The digitizer is still working; you have just disabled all the display registers. The analog display can be very useful for viewing time-varying modulation such as television video signals. It is also useful if you are graduating from an older spectrum analyzer that may not have digital display capabilities. It provides a more familiar display and allows you to see the similarity between the 2711's MAX/MIN display and the analog signal. You can usually obtain a well-defined analog display, especially at higher sweep speeds, by varying the intensity (see *INTENSITY* at the end of this section) or by turning off the on-screen readouts.

Press [D] to activate the D register.

DISPLAY STORAGE

SAVE
ENABLE



The SAVE ENABLE] key modifies the function of the [A], [B], [C], and [D] keys. When used with [A], [B], or [C], it saves the current digitizer output in the corresponding register.

Press [SAVE ENABLE]. The red LED below [SAVE] lights. This indicates that the SAVE function is armed.

Press [A] to save in the A register what is presently being displayed. The green LED below [A] lights, but observe that the A register was turned off and remains turned off. **Press [D] to turn off the D register and press [A] to turn on the A register.** Note that the display does not change with time. The contents of the A register are not being updated. You are viewing a saved display.

Next you will save a trace in B. **Press [B] to activate the B register and ensure the A register is turned off (red LED not lit).** Use an arrow key to set the resolution bandwidth to 30 kHz. **Press [SAVE ENABLE] [B].**

The current display is saved and the [B] key's green LED lights. The register remains active, but because it is now saved, it is no longer updated.

NOTE

Status of the red LED is not changed by the [SAVE] operation.

Press the [A], [B], [C], and [D] keys to deactivate all registers (all red LEDs extinguished). Use an arrow key to set the resolution bandwidth to 5 MHz, and press [SAVE ENABLE] [C]. The [C] key's green LED lights. **Press [C] to activate the C register.** You see the digitized and saved version of the analog sweep. The digitizer is continuously updated, whether it is being displayed or not. Further, it is always the current digitizer output that is saved. For example, you cannot save one register into another. However, non-volatile RAM does make it possible to permanently save the contents of the display registers by transferring them to stored settings registers (see **OTHER USER-DEFINED SETTINGS** in the next section).

Press [C] to deactivate the C register and [A] to activate A. To clear the A register, press the same keys used to store a waveform. Press [SAVE ENABLE] [A]. The [A] key's green LED turns off indicating there is nothing stored in the A register. The register remains active, but the displayed spectrum is now updated during each sweep.

Register Priority

The on-screen readouts are stored along with the sweep. Unfortunately, the instrument can only display one group of readouts at a time. When multiple registers are active, the readouts for the highest priority register are displayed. Register priority is shown below.

PRIORITY	REGISTER
highest	D-register, current waveform
:	C-register, current waveform
:	B-register, current waveform
:	A-register, current waveform
:	D-register, saved waveform
:	C-register, saved waveform
:	B-register, saved waveform
lowest	A-register, saved waveform

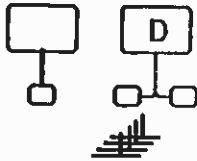
To see how register priority works, continue with the following operations. Press [A] and [B] to turn off A and turn on B. Note the on-screen readouts. The indicated resolution bandwidth should be 30 kHz. Now press [C] to turn on C. The resolution bandwidth should read 5 MHz (C has a higher priority than B, so its readouts are displayed). Press [A] to turn on the A register and set the resolution bandwidth to AUTO (press [AUTO]). Notice the RBW readout change. Any register containing a current sweep has a higher priority than a register containing a saved sweep, so the A-register readouts are now displayed.


Experiment more, if you wish, then clear and deactivate the B and C registers. Leave only the D register active (red LED lit).

100.0MHZ	(AUTO SWEEP)	ATTN 40DB
10.0DBM		VF 300KHZ
5.0MHZ/		10 DB/
300KHZ RBW (AUTO)	CALIBRATOR	

DISPLAY STORAGE

SAVE
ENABLE



The [SAVE ENABLE] key also changes the function of the [D] key. When used with [D], it places the 2711 in "waterfall" mode (symbolized by the  icon below the [D] key). The waterfall display is more effective in peak acquisition mode (which will be discussed under *DSPL* in the next section).

Press [DSPL] [4] to enter peak acquisition mode. Press [SAVE ENABLE] [D] to enter waterfall mode.

All eight of the register status LEDs light and four traces appear. Because waterfall mode uses all four registers, A, B, and C registers must be cleared before the instrument allows you to enter waterfall mode. This is a safeguard to prevent accidental overwriting of previously saved data. If you attempt to enter this mode without first clearing the registers, an error message appears.

Look at Figure 5-1. D is the bottom waveform and A the top. Each waveform is displaced upwards one division from the preceding waveform, and shifted 1/2 division to the right. The most recent (current) sweep is in the D register, the previous sweep in C, the next previous in B, and so on. At the end of each sweep, the waveforms are all shifted up one register. This display can be used to watch slowly varying spectra evolve or to obtain a "feel" for the variability of signals. Waterfall can also be useful for "capturing" an event that occurs quickly. In the present case of the calibration signal, there is virtually no variation.

Create a small signal shift by slightly changing the center frequency and observe how the display responds.

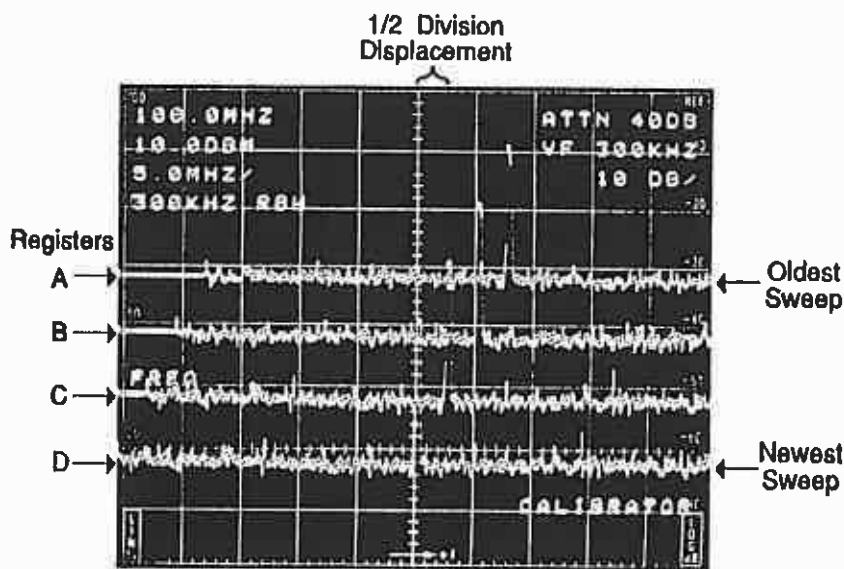


Figure 5-1. Example of a waterfall display.

You can halt the waterfall action at any time by pressing [SGL SWP]. Thereafter, each time you press [SGL SWP] the waterfall will advance one trace. Exit normally from single sweep mode to continue the waterfall display.

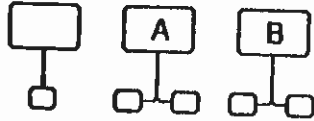
You do not have to view all the traces. Press [A] and [C] to turn off the A and C registers. Next, press [A], [B], [C], and [D] to turn off B and D and turn A and C back on. You can view any, all, or none of the registers. Turn them all off and the analog display reappears. However, the instrument remains in waterfall mode. You cannot selectively erase a register or store new data without first exiting from waterfall mode.

Press [B] and [D] to turn on all registers (red LEDs lit). Press [SAVE ENABLE] [D] to exit from the waterfall display mode the same way you entered it. All LEDs except the red D turn off, and the waterfall display reduces to a single D register trace.

Press [FREQUENCY] [1] [0] [0] [X] to reset the center frequency to 100 MHz. Return to MAX/MIN acquisition mode by again pressing [DSPL MENU] [4].

DISPLAY STORAGE

MAX
HOLD
A & B



The A and B registers can be used in MAX HOLD mode to save the peak values of measured spectra. These registers must be cleared before using them in MAX HOLD mode.

The MAX HOLD feature compares the amplitude of the current sweep, point for point, with the stored maximum value of previous sweeps. If the current amplitude is greater, the current value becomes the new stored maximum; if not, the previous value is retained.

Press [D] to deactivate the D register. Make sure the A register is cleared and activated, then press [MAX HOLD A & B].

The red LED below the [MAX HOLD] key lights signifying that you have entered the MAX HOLD mode. The spectral display, especially the noise, is much smoother. After several minutes, you will notice the noise floor appears to drift upwards. Because the calibration signal is constant, it will not change. The upward drift of the noise floor slows and stops as the most likely maximum values are detected and stored. Now only an occasional noise peak exceeds the previously stored values. **Press [D] to activate the D register.** Observe how the waveform in the D register (waveform without MAX HOLD) is always less than the A register waveform. Recording the peak signal excursions observed during a large number of sweeps using the MAX HOLD feature yields an estimate of the maximum signal values. It can also be very useful for determining maximum signal amplitude during transient conditions, or for making low-level fluctuating signals more apparent by saving their peak value. You can observe as many sweeps as you wish. You could equally as well have used the B register for MAX HOLD.

When you are ready to exit the MAX HOLD mode, press [MAX HOLD A & B] [A] to turn off the A register. The red LED goes out and only the register D sweep remains.

A capability called MIN HOLD, similar to MAX HOLD, saves the minimum signal values. Using both MIN HOLD and MAX HOLD, you can measure a signal's total excursion. For details, see the **DSPL** discussion in the next section.

FREQ/MKRS**MKR/ Δ
/OFF**

Marker-Delta-Off key ([MKR/ Δ /OFF]) is a three-way toggle that enables you to control one or both markers. A marker is a bright spot that appears on the digitized waveform. Markers cannot be used with the analog display. When marker mode is turned off, the spot on the display indicates either the center or starting frequency of the display. When a single marker is turned on, it can be moved to any point along the displayed waveform using the FREQ/MKRS knob. The corresponding signal amplitude and frequency is displayed on-screen. The marker amplitude readout represents the most accurate method for determining signal amplitude with the 2711 (unless a separate, extremely precise signal is used for direct comparison). In general, amplitude accuracy is further enhanced if the signal being measured is first moved to within one division of the top graticule line using the REF LEVEL controls.

In delta (Δ) marker mode, two markers designate the points on the waveform between which the differences in signal amplitudes and frequencies are measured and displayed. It is not possible to display one marker on a particular trace while displaying the second marker on another trace. More than one register can be displayed, but the markers appear only on the highest priority waveform.

To activate the marker, press [MKR/ Δ /OFF].

The sweep does not change, but the RF attenuation and video filter readouts have changed to (approximately):

M 100.0MHZ
M -30.0DBM

The M preceding the first two items in the right-hand, on-screen readouts represent the amplitude and frequency of the signal at the marker position. Turn the FREQ/MKRS knob several clicks clockwise. The marker moves to the right and the readout tracks it. The knob now controls the marker position rather than the center frequency. Move the marker into the noise. Notice that the marker actually moves up and down between the max and min noise values on alternate clicks of the knob. This is because each click of the knob moves the marker to the next location in the digital

waveform memory, thus tracking the stored max and min values. **Turn the knob counter-clockwise and the marker moves left.** Again, the readout tracks the signal amplitude and frequency at the marker position. Be aware that the marker frequency accuracy is not as good as the center frequency accuracy (see **CTR-MEAS/TRKG** later in this section for a discussion of frequency measurement accuracies) because it includes a span non-linearity component.

If you attempt to move the marker past either edge of the display, the spectrum will move towards the opposite edge while the marker remains stationary. **Try moving the marker past the right edge; the signal peak moves to the left. Now turn the knob a few clicks counterclockwise.** The marker moves to the left but the spectrum will not move back towards its original position until you attempt to move the marker past the other edge of the display.

Press [FREQUENCY] [1] [0] [0] [X] to center the calibration signal on-screen, and use the tuning knob to center the marker. Press [MKR/Δ/OFF] again.

The spectral display did not change, but the first two items of the right column now read:

**D 0KHZ
D 0.0DB**

You have turned on the delta-marker mode. **Turn the tuning knob clockwise.** Now you can see both markers. One remains at the original marker position, while the position of the second is controlled by the knob. The right column indicates the difference (denoted by the letter D preceding the readouts) in frequency and amplitude between the two marker positions.

Use the appropriate [↑] keys to increase the span to 50 MHz/division and reference level to -10 dBm. Use the tuning knob to place the movable marker at the top of the first signal peak to the right of center (the calibration signal's second harmonic). The right column now reads (approximately):

**D 100MHZ
D -17.0 DB**

You are measuring the difference in frequency and amplitude between the fundamental and second harmonic of the calibration signal. Your instrument may not read these values exactly, but it should be close.

If you attempt to tune the movable marker past the edge of the display, the spectral display behaves almost the same as it did for the single marker. The difference is that the stationary marker remains fixed with respect to the spectrum. You can even force the stationary marker off-screen and the readout will continue to indicate the difference between the two marker positions. In this way you can make difference measurements across the whole input range of the analyzer.

Turn the tuning knob clockwise until the readout indicates the movable marker is 900 MHz to the right of the stationary marker. Try to locate the sixth or seventh harmonics of the calibration signal near center screen. If they are not visible, press [VID FLTR] to turn on the video filter. You should now see the peaks. Use the tuning knob to place the moveable marker on either peak to measure its difference in amplitude and frequency relative to the fundamental calibration signal.

Exit marker mode by pressing [MKR/ Δ /OFF] until the normal RF attenuation and video filter readouts return (one press if in Δ -marker mode, two if in single marker mode).

Press [VID FLTR] to turn off the video filter.

140.0MHZ	(AUTO SWEEP)	ATTN 10DB
-20.0DBM		VF WIDE
50.0MHZ/		10 DB/
5MHZ RBW (AUTO)	CALIBRATOR	

FREQ/MKRS**CTR-MEAS
/TRKG**

The center measure feature detects the signal peak nearest the marker and above a preset amplitude threshold (changing the threshold is discussed in section 6 under **MKR/FREQ**). When the marker is turned off, the signal peak nearest center screen is detected. The instrument then measures the signal frequency and makes this value the new center frequency.

With this feature the tuning knob is not the only way to measure a signal frequency. Instead, place the marker close to the signal of interest and press the [CTR-MEAS/TRKG] key. Press this key twice to enable the signal track feature that keeps drifting signals centered by continuously repeating the center measure operation.

NOTE

[CTR-MEAS/TRKG] provides the easiest and most accurate method of determining a signal's frequency.

Press [MKR/ Δ /OFF] to turn on the marker and place it near the calibration signal using the FREQ/MKRS knob. (In general, place the marker near the signal of interest. Without a marker, the signal nearest center screen is measured). Use the arrow keys to set the reference level so the signal peak is within one division of the top graticule line and press [CTR MEAS/TRKG].

The calibration signal is centered on the display, and the frequency of the centered signal is indicated by the new center frequency and marker frequency readouts.

NOTE

If your 2711 contains the Option 02 frequency counter, the amplitude and frequency of the centered signal are read out at the upper right of the screen preceded by a C (counter). The counter readout provides the most accurate frequency determination available on the 2711, and its resolution can be set to 1 Hz. The counter readings disappear when a control setting is altered.

The marker and counter amplitude readouts are equally accurate. However, the signal amplitude indicated by the position of the marker relative to the graticule may differ slightly from the readout. The readout is more accurate because it contains no display non-linearities.

The Option 02 counter frequency readout is more precise than the standard center frequency reading. Frequency accuracy is

$\pm 1 \times 10^{-5}$ of center frequency ± 5 kHz \pm (least significant digit)

for standard instruments, and

$\pm 1 \times 10^{-5}$ of center frequency ± 10 Hz \pm (least significant digit)

for instruments with the Option 02 frequency counter installed.

Now you will view the calibration signal's third harmonic more closely. Use the tuning knob to place the marker near the third harmonic, at about 280 MHz, and press [CTR MEAS/TRKG].

The calibration signal's third harmonic frequency becomes the new center frequency and its frequency and amplitude are displayed at the top of the right-hand readouts.

Press [MKR/ Δ /OFF] to enter delta-marker mode. Using the tuning knob, place the movable marker near the calibration signal (at 100 MHz) and press [CTR MEAS/TRKG].

This mode of operation centers the signal peak nearest the movable marker and measures the difference between the centered signal and the signal at the fixed marker. In this case, the

fundamental is centered and the markers appear atop it and the third harmonic. Readings of approximately 200 MHz and 17 dB appear at the top of the left column preceded by D or DC (delta-counter if Option 02 is installed). The center measure feature with delta marker mode provides a very convenient method of determining precise signal differences without manual tuning or interpolation of graphical data.

Press [MKR/Δ/OFF] to turn off the markers.

The center measure feature can perform still another function for Option 02 Instruments. When center measure is used in zero span mode, the counter measures the frequency at the output of the detector. Because the output varies only if the signal is modulated, the counter is actually measuring the frequency of the modulation (if none is present, you receive a message saying so). Normally AM detection is used, but you can select FM detection (see *Viewing Instantaneous Frequency Deviation* in section 6). With either detector, the center measure feature provides a quick method of determining the frequency of the modulating signal. Of course, the modulation frequency must fall within the bandwidth of the resolution BW filter and any video filter that is active (and the FM discriminator when FM detection is selected).

100.0MHZ	(AUTO SWEEP)	ATTN 10DB
-20.0DBM		VF WIDE
20.0MHZ/		10 DB/
5MHZ RBW (AUTO)	CALIBRATOR	

The signal track feature continuously repeats the center measure operation. On each sweep the signal nearest mid-screen is measured and centered. This is useful for keeping a slowly varying or jittering signal centered for close observation.

To activate signal track, press [CTR MEAS/TRKG] twice.

The term TRKG appears in center screen indicating that the signal tracking mode is active.

Turn the tuning knob while a sweep is underway.

On the next sweep the signal may be displaced, but on the following sweep it is centered on the screen. The frequency readouts also change. Tracking mode continuously repeats the center measure feature.

If the signal being tracked falls below a preset threshold (see **Setting the Signal Threshold** in the next section), tracking halts and this message is displayed:

NO SIGNAL FOUND ABOVE THRESHOLD

The message is accompanied by a tone. When the signal rises back above the threshold, signal track resumes automatically.

Simulate signal loss and recovery by turning the calibrator off and then back on again ([UTIL] [9]). The audible tone makes signal tracking mode useful as an amplitude threshold detector.

With the optional frequency counter, you can also obtain continuous counter readings in signal track mode. **Press [MKR/FREQ]/ [9] [1] [1] to turn on the counter** (See **Counter Resolution** in section 6 for additional information).

Press [MKR/Δ/OFF] to exit from tracking mode and turn off the markers.

FREQ/MKRS



Use the tuning knob to center the calibration signal and press [MKR/Δ/OFF] to turn on the marker. Press [MKR →]. The marker jumps to the second harmonic's peak.

Press the [MKR →] key again. It jumps to the third harmonic.

Now press [MKR ←]. The marker jumps in the other direction. [MKR ←] and [MKR →] move the marker to the next signal peak in the indicated direction and above the preset threshold, but they will not go beyond the edge of the display or lower than 0 Hz. Further, the readouts and center measure/ tracking behave as if you had manually moved the marker.

Press [MKR/Δ/OFF] to enter delta-marker mode and press the [MKR ←] and [MKR →] arrow keys.

The movable marker jumps in the direction of the arrows just as the single marker did, and the readouts and center measure/ tracking behave as if you had manually moved the marker.

FREQ/MKRS

PEAK FIND



Ensure the markers are turned off by checking for an RF Attenuation readout. Press [FREQUENCY] [2] [7] [5] [X] to set the center frequency to 275 MHz and press [PEAK FIND]. The marker automatically turned on and jumped to the peak of the 100 MHz calibration signal. The 2711 detected the highest signal on-screen and automatically moved the marker to it. After the move, the instrument behaves exactly as if you had moved the marker there manually.

Use [MKR →] to move the marker to the peak of the third harmonic. Press [PEAK FIND] again. The marker moves back to the fundamental; the marker peak find feature always locates the highest peak on-screen.

Any control settings can be used

MISCELLANEOUS CONTROLS

We have discussed and experimented with all the 2711 functions except the menu keys and a few miscellaneous controls. These controls will be covered briefly here.

PLOT



If your 2711 has a communications port such as GPIB (Option 03) or RS-232C (Option 08), a [PLOT] key is located immediately below the VERT SCALE function block. [PLOT] causes a printer or plotter to draw an image of the screen. The on-screen readouts are plotted on the drawing in the border area so they don't interfere with the waveform. If you wish

to have graticule lines on the printout, you must turn them on by pressing [UTIL] [4] [1] [5]. You can also add labels to the plot (see ***Adding Titles and Labels*** in section 6).

Before attempting to create a screen plot, you must ensure that the optional communications port is correctly configured (see ***System Configuration*** in the next section).

To plot the screen, check that your printer or plotter is powered up, on line, and that the paper is correctly aligned. Then, with the 2711 displaying the desired trace(s), press [PLOT].

The printer or plotter quickly begins to draw the trace. Because the printer/plotter output data are buffered, the 2711 returns to the spectral display and is ready to accept additional commands before printing/plotting ends.

NOTE

Plotting time can be reduced by choosing peak acquisition mode, or using the video filter, to reduce noise variations. Noise variations do not affect printing time when using a dot-matrix printer.

READOUT

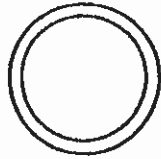


You can turn the standard on-screen readouts on and off. There are two reasons for doing so. First, it prevents the readouts from overlapping the display.

To understand the second reason, initialize the 2711 to the factory power-up defaults ([UTIL] [1] [1]) and press [D] to enter analog display mode. Notice the regularly spaced dark areas in the sweep. Now press [READOUT] to turn off the readouts.

The dark areas are gone now. The dark areas represent time when the CRT beam is writing the on-screen readouts. Their appearance changes with sweep speed. By removing the readouts, you eliminate the dark areas. You will also notice that the trace has intensified. The added intensity may be important when viewing analog data at high sweep speeds.

Press [READOUT] [D] to turn on the readouts and activate the register D.

INTENSITY

The intensity control is a rotary knob located directly above the [POWER] switch. **Twist the INTENSITY knob slowly back and forth. Notice the display grow brighter and dimmer as you turn the control.** Leave the intensity set to a level sufficient for good contrast in your ambient light conditions. If you must turn it to full intensity, try reducing the ambient light or shielding the display. **If the instrument is used in direct sunlight, a contrast-enhancing filter is recommended (part of Option 33).**



**TRACE
ROT**



**VERT
POS**



**HORIZ
POS**

There are three non-locking, slotted controls at the upper right of the rear panel that are used with a built-in test display to adjust trace alignment. The control shafts are

recessed within hex nuts that attach the controls to the chassis. Do not attempt to turn the hex nuts and do not use excessive force when turning the slotted shafts. A plastic adjustment tool is recommended in preference to a screwdriver. Display alignment instructions using these controls are located in the Utility Menu portion of the next section.

Section 6 — Software Controls

Replace this page with the tab divider of the same name.

SECTION 6

SOFTWARE CONTROLS - THE MENUS

This chapter describes in detail the menu-selected, software-driven features of the 2711. You will discover how this approach to instrument control provides a degree of measurement flexibility otherwise unattainable without a large, cumbersome, and hard to understand control panel.

NOTE

The exercises within this section require some user experience with the control panel and data entry operations. Refer to sections 4 and 5 when detailed information is needed for specific controls.

*During this section, perform the operations that are highlighted with **bold text**.*

The front panel contains a function block labeled **MENUS**. Pressing the keys in this block *calls up*, or causes to be displayed on the CRT screen, a *menu*. The menus enable you to perform a variety of tasks, some of which are not convenient using the front-panel dedicated controls. These include:

- Controlling spectrum analyzer operational modes
- Changing control increments and settings
- Storing and recalling control settings
- Normalizing the spectrum analyzer
- Altering measurement parameters
- Executing diagnostic routines
- Automating measurements

Each menu is a list of numbered items. Choosing an item often results in a secondary menu being displayed. Some infrequently used items from the secondary menu may call up a tertiary menu. A few items from the menus are neither listed nor explained in the following discussions: these are absent from the instrument, or represent factory troubleshooting and calibration aids not intended for general operator use.

INPUT MENU		
1	PREAMP	OFF
2	50 OHM DBM/75 OHM DBMV	50
3	REF LEVEL UNIT	DBM
4	1ST MXR INPUT LVL	-30DBM
5	RF ATTENUATION	AUTO 50DB
6	EXTERNAL ATTEN/AMPL	NONE
9	CAL SIGNAL @ 100MHZ -30DBM	OFF
PRESS ANY MENU KEY TO EXIT		
PRESS BKSP FOR PREVIOUS DISPLAY		

Figure 6-1. The INPUT Menu.

An overview of the menus is included in the *Operation Summary* section. Once you are familiar with the menu features, the overview should provide all the information needed to use the menus effectively.

To use the menus, first press the appropriate menu key in the MENUS function block, and then press the number key on the KEYPAD corresponding to the desired item.

A *feature status indicator* on the right side of the menu item shows the present value or condition of that parameter or feature. See Figure 6-1 as an example. The status indicator is updated as you make selections or alter parameters.

Depending on the parameter or feature, there are three ways the status may be changed. Each uses the numeric KEYPAD:

- When only two or three values or conditions are permitted, pressing the KEYPAD key corresponding to the item number cycles through the acceptable values. At each step, the new status appears at the end of the line.
- If the 2711 accepts a larger but still limited range of values, it presents a secondary menu consisting of a list of the values that may be selected by pressing their corresponding keypad key. For instance, if you select item 3 from the INPUT MENU shown in Figure 6-1, the REFERENCE LEVEL UNITS Menu shown in Figure 6-2 appears. An

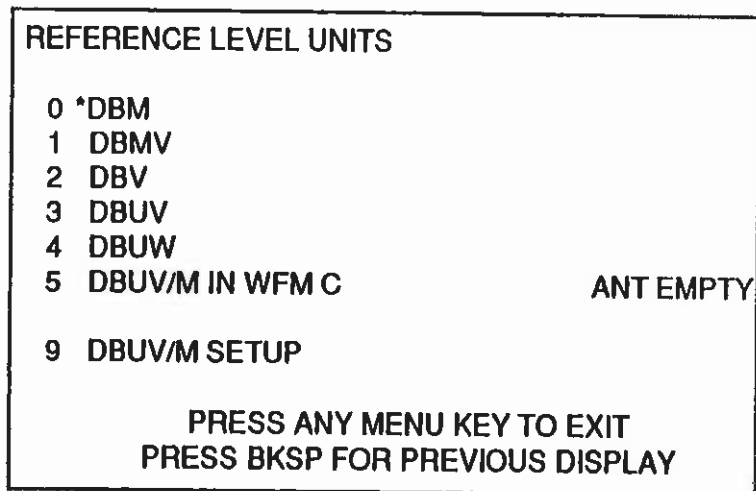


Figure 6-2. Reference Level Units Menu.

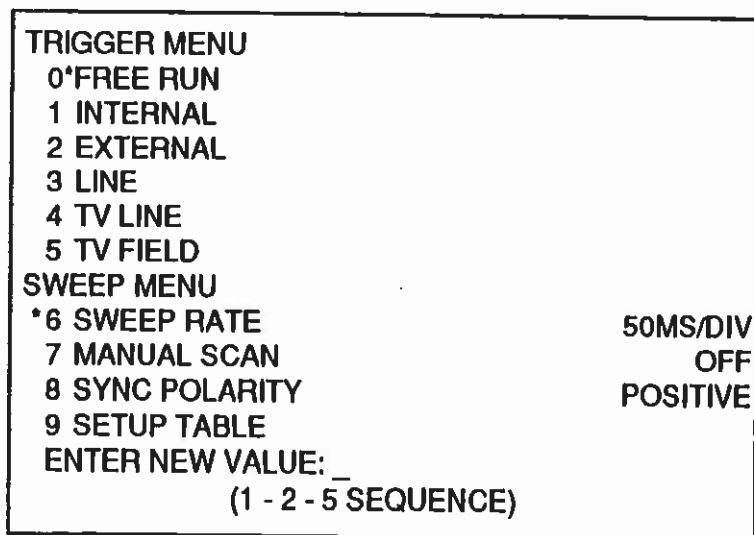


Figure 6-3. Sweep/Trigger Menu with SWEEP RATE selection chosen.

asterisk (*) inserted between the item number and its description indicates the value presently selected.

- If a parameter can have a wide range of numerical values, two things happen. First, the instrument precedes the selected item number with an asterisk (*). Then the 2711 produces a prompt near the bottom of the screen instructing you to enter a new value. This is shown in Figure 6-3 where item 6 from the SWP/TRIG Menu has been selected.

To enter a setting or parameter value, you press the KEYPAD keys representing the numerical value, and then press the appropriate terminator key. The numbers appear on screen as keys are pressed, but are not entered until you press the terminator key. If you make a mistake, correct it any time before pressing a terminator by repeatedly pressing [BKSP] (the backspace key) until the incorrect number disappears. Then type the correct value.

The terminator keys ([W], [X], [Y], [Z]) determine the units and enter the data. Each key can represent several units, but they are context-sensitive and the 2711 will determine the intended unit based on the parameter or setting you are attempting to modify. For instance, [X] can represent MHz, mSEC, or mV, but if you are attempting to enter a sweep rate, the 2711 will correctly interpret the units as mSEC when you press [X].

Thus, to enter a value of 20 milliseconds, you would press:

[2] [0] [X] or [2] [0] [.] [0] [X]

Whereas to enter 20 microseconds instead, you would press:

[[2] [0] [Y] or [2] [0] [.] [0] [Y]

Note that entering a value for the sweep rate also removes the sweep rate parameter from AUTO mode. To return to automatic selection, you press [AUTO] in the SWEEP function block.

There are three ways to exit from a menu:

1. Many selections cause the instrument to revert automatically to the measurement mode it was in before calling up the menu. A small delay is provided between making the selection and reverting to the spectral display to enable you to see the status indicator at the end of the menu line change. However, the change is also reflected in the on-screen readouts in many cases, or by the nature of the spectral display itself.
2. This prompt is displayed at the bottom of all menus prior to making a selection:

**PRESS ANY MENU KEY TO EXIT
PRESS BKSP FOR PREVIOUS DISPLAY**

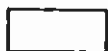
Pressing a menu key returns directly to the spectral display. This technique may be used if you do not desire to make a selection.

3. Pressing the backspace key, [BKSP], returns to the previous menu. If there is no previous menu, you return to the spectral display. Therefore, this key can be used to return to a previous menu, or to back entirely out of a menu and return to the spectral display.

In general, menus are not reproduced here. It is intended that you follow the experiments in this section. However, should you need a reference, consult section 4, *Operation Summary*.

100.0MHZ	(AUTO SWEEP)	ATTN 10DB
-20.0DBM		VF WIDE
20.0MHZ/		10 DB/
5MHZ RBW (AUTO)		

INPUT



The INPUT Menu is used to control instrument parameters which alter signal sensitivity, change measurement amplitude units, and turn the calibration signal on and off.

To call up the INPUT Menu, press:

[INPUT]

The menu shown in Figure 6-1 appears on screen.

Turning the Calibrator On and Off

The word OFF following item 9 of the Input Menu indicates the calibration signal is turned off. Turn on the calibration signal by pressing [9].

The spectral display reappears and the word CALIBRATOR is now displayed at the lower right of the screen indicating the calibration

signal is on. The calibrator signal is the peak at center screen. Turning on the calibrator also internally disconnects the RF INPUT from the RF attenuator and prevents viewing of external signals.

Again press [INPUT].

The word following item 9 now is ON. In this way, the menu enables you to toggle between the two possible settings, and informs you of the current setting.

Turn the calibrator off by pressing keypad key 9 again.

The spectral display returns, but without CALIBRATOR displayed. Press [INPUT] [9] once again to turn the calibrator back on.

Setting the RF Attenuation

Set the reference level to 0 dBm ([REF LEVEL] [0] [Y]). Press [↓] to the right of [REF LEVEL] twice. Notice that the signal peak rises but the noise floor does not.

The RF attenuation decreases each time you pressed the key; the increased signal height is achieved by reducing attenuation. The noise floor, however, is generated after the RF attenuator, so it is not affected.

Reset the reference level to 0.0 dBm and select the INPUT Menu.

Item 5 indicates that the RF attenuation is 30 dB and is being selected automatically. You can set the RF attenuation to a fixed value.

Select Item 5 and this prompt appears:

**ENTER NEW VALUE OR "W": _
(0 TO 50 IN 2 DB STEPS)
W = AUTO**

Enter a fixed value of 30 dB by pressing:

[3] [0] [Y]

The display returns unchanged. **Again press [↑] twice.** Now the signal peak and the noise floor rise. Pressing the [↑] key twice increased the 2711's IF gain by 20 dB to lower the reference level, but the RF attenuation is unchanged.

Press [INPUT] [5] [W] to place the RF attenuation back in automatic mode.

Changing Reference Level Units

You can change the reference level units via the Input Menu. **Ensure the reference level is set to 0.0 dBm and then choose Item 3 from the INPUT Menu.**

A list of six possible units appears. **Select Item 2, DBV.** The spectral display is restored but the reference level now reads -13.0 dBV because 1 mW across 50 Ω (0 dBm) represents .223 Volts, which is 13 dB below a 1 Volt reference (0 dBV). Only the units change, not the gain, attenuation, or input impedance. Therefore, the height of the spectrum is unchanged.

Change the units back to DBM and turn off the calibrator.

Each of the six units except the DBUV/M (dB relative to a μ Volt per meter) represents a simple change of scale. Be aware that the 2711 always measures the voltage at its input across its 50 Ω input impedance, and then scales the result according to the selected units. Because the DBUV/M is not just a simple unit conversion, it is discussed separately in a later section.

Accommodating External Amplification/Attenuation

When you wish to measure a high amplitude signal, it is possible that you will have to attenuate the signal before applying it to the spectrum analyzer. (Remember, the maximum total signal power at the input to the 2711 should not exceed +20 dBm, or 100 mW.) On the other hand, if you have a very weak signal, you may need to amplify it. You could mentally add the extra attenuation or amplification to the displayed signal peak to determine the correct signal amplitude, but the 2711 offers a better way.

Ensure the calibrator is turned off and select the Input Menu. Item 6 tells you there is presently no external attenuation or amplification. Select Item 6. A secondary menu appears which enables you to enter the amount of external attenuation or amplification. Select Item 1. Suppose you have attenuated an RF transmitter output 40 dB prior to measuring it. Following the on-screen prompts, press:

[4] [0] [Z]

This procedure enters an external attenuation value of 40 dB. The spectral display does not change, but the reference level now indicates 40 dBm and is followed by the term:

OFST

indicating that the reference level has been offset, in this case by 40 dB. The reference level is offset automatically when you enter any value for external attenuation or gain.

To turn off the offset, first press:

[INPUT] [6]

Item 0 tells you the offset is turned on. Turn it off by selecting Item 0. The spectral display will reappear, but OFST is gone.

Toggle the offset back on without entering the external attenuation value again by pressing:

[INPUT] [6] [0]

Now turn off the offset, and then enter a value of 0 dB for external attenuation.

Accommodating a 75 Ohm Source

The 2711 has a 50 Ω input impedance and expects a 50 Ω signal source impedance. However, a 75 Ω source impedance is typically associated with some applications such as cable television, which uses the dBmV as a "standard" amplitude measurement unit. The 2711 provides two ways to make 75 Ω measurements.

When making narrow-band measurements (carrier-to-noise ratios, relative amplitudes of signals close together in frequency such as television visual and aural carriers, bandwidths of narrow signals, interference levels relative to a nearby signal, etc.), you can generally connect the 2711 directly to a 75 Ω source. For these cases, item 2 of the INPUT Menu (50 OHM DBM/75 OHM DBMV) automatically inserts correction factors to account for the 75/50 Ω impedance difference and the conversion from dBm to dBmV. If a 75 Ω source is connected to the input of a 75 Ω instrument, the voltage will be 1.9 dB higher than it is with the same source connected to the 50 Ω input of the 2711. We can also calculate that 0 dBm dissipated in 50 Ω is equal to +47 dBmV across the same resistance. The total difference is, therefore, 48.9 dB. Item 2 of the Input Menu differs from the dBmV unit chosen via [INPUT] [3] [1] by including the 1.9 dB factor to account for the higher voltage which would be present at the input to a 75 Ω instrument.

Ensure the reference level is set to 0.0DBM. Toggle the Input Impedance/reference units between 50 OHM DBM and 75 OHM DBMV by pressing:

[INPUT] [2]

Once again the spectral display is unchanged, but the reference level has been converted to 48.9DBMV to reflect the new source impedance and units.

Return to 50 OHM DBM by pressing [INPUT] [2] again.

If you do not select the 50 Ω mode, a 1.9 dB impedance correction remains regardless of the units you select.

<p>NOTE</p>

Selecting item 2 from the INPUT Menu does not change the 2711 input impedance; it only inserts a correction for the 50/75 Ω impedance mismatch and a conversion factor from dBm to dBmV.

When making broad-band measurements or measurements of absolute amplitude (antenna, system, or amplifier sweeps, absolute

carrier amplitude, comparison of signals widely separated in frequency, etc.), you may want to present a matched load to the source to provide maximum flatness and to minimize standing wave ratios. You can do so by inserting the matching minimum loss pad (an optional accessory) shown in Figure 6-4 between the source and the 2711. To obtain correct dBmV readings, set the INPUT Menu measurement parameters as follows:

Item 2: 50 OHM DBM/75 OHM DBMV	50
Item 3: REF LEVEL UNIT	DBMV
Item 6: EXTERNAL ATTEN/AMPL	-7.5

In this case, you select the dBmV unit via [INPUT] [3] [1] and the 50 Ω source because the 2711 is matched to the 50 Ω side of the minimum loss pad. The signal is actually being terminated in a 75 Ω impedance. Further, it is the attenuation of the pad which is entered under item 6 and not its insertion loss. The 7.5 dB value accounts for both the insertion loss and the fact that the signal at the input to the minimum loss pad is 1.9 dB greater than it would be if the 75 Ω source were connected directly to the instrument.

If in doubt whether the pad is needed, compare a measurement with the pad to the same measurement without the pad. If there is no significant difference, abandon the pad. In some cases, such as carrier-to-noise measurements, the use of a pad may drop your system noise level below the instrument noise floor. In such cases, the pad cannot be used. Removing the pad typically does not distort C/N measurements.

When a 75 Ω source is routinely used, you can make the settings above part of the spectrum analyzer user-defined power-up (see the *UTIL* discussion later in this section); then you will not have to change the settings each time the 2711 is used.

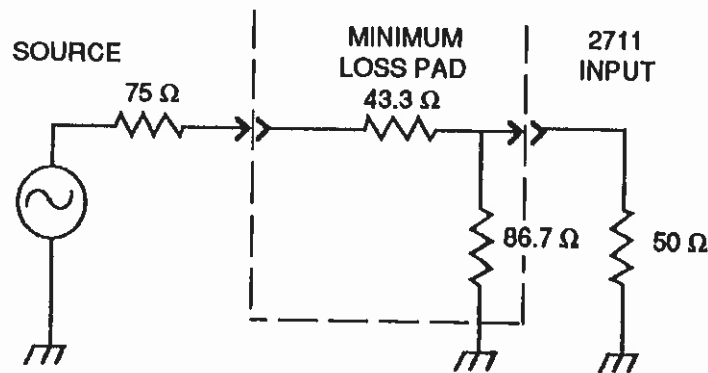


Figure 6-4. 75/50 ohm matching minimum loss pad.

Setting the First Mixer Input Level

Over-driving the analyzer's first mixer circuit can generate spurious signals and cause inaccurate measurements. As the signal amplitude increases past the maximum linear range of the circuit, its output amplitude becomes less than it should be. This creates lower-than-actual amplitude measurements and generates spurious signals through the processes of intermodulation or harmonic distortion. Conversely, if the signal amplitude at the mixer is too low, signals may become lost in the internal noise. An optimum compromise is achieved within the 2711 by making the top graticule line represent a -30 dBm level at the input to the first mixer.

However, in cases where total signal energy is large, it may be beneficial to restrict the input to the mixer to a smaller value. For example, by setting the first mixer input level to -40 dBm, you increase the RF attenuation by 10 dB while simultaneously increasing the IF gain 10 dB. This provides additional protection to the first mixer. In other cases, you may want to examine a low-level signal adjacent to a high-level signal. A -20 dBm level at the first mixer allows you to get an additional 10 dB of sensitivity by reducing the RF attenuation 10 dB but decreasing the IF gain 10 dB to compensate. The danger is that internally generated distortion products may become more noticeable.

To change the signal level at the mixer, press:

[INPUT] [4]

You are prompted to enter a new mixer input level. You can enter values from -50 dBm to -20 dBm in 2 dB steps. **Try -20 dBm and -40 dBm while observing the level of the noise.** Because the RF attenuation is increased by the same amount the first mixer input is decreased, the noise floor rises as the mixer level is reduced. **When you are done experimenting, set the mixer input level back to -30 dBm.**

100.0MHZ	(AUTO SWEEP)	ATTN 0DB
-50.0DBM		VF 300KHZ
5MHZ/		10 DB/
300KHZ RBW (AUTO)		

Turning the Preamplifier On and Off

Your spectrum analyzer is equipped with an internal preamplifier. The preamplifier can be very useful when measuring cable TV noise (see the C/N discussion later in this chapter) or other signals near or below the normal instrument noise floor. It is also useful for increasing the sensitivity of radiated RF energy measurements (leakage, RFI/EMI, etc.). The nominal gain in sensitivity using the preamplifier is 12 dB. Above 600 MHz the preamplifier remains usable and useful, but its flatness rolls off somewhat and is not specified. To be effective, the preamplifier must be used with no RF attenuation. The preamplifier is not normally turned on because it can easily result in over-driving the first mixer. The signal amplitude at the first mixer with the preamplifier on and no RF attenuation is equal to the input signal level plus about 18 dB. In other words, a -40 dBm signal would overdrive the first mixer. Total signal amplitude greater than -48 dBm at the input to the 2711 with the preamplifier turned on may create spurious signal components and produce unreliable amplitude measurements.

Note the level of the noise floor and then press:

[INPUT] [1]

Item 1 of the INPUT Menu toggles the preamplifier on and off. The preamplifier is now turned on as indicated by the term:

PRE

following the reference level readout.

Again note the noise floor; it should be about 12 dB lower than before. The instrument has automatically reduced its internal gain (thus lowering the normal noise floor) to compensate for the added gain of the preamplifier. The result is that you can now see signals which are up to 12 dB below the normal instrument noise floor. **Turn the preamplifier off.**

Using the DBUV/M

The decibel relative to a microvolt per meter ($\text{dB}\mu\text{V/m}$) is an electric field strength unit that characterizes the intensity of radiated RF energy. Typically, the radiated signal amplitude is measured at the terminals of a calibrated antenna to determine the field strength. With most spectrum analyzers, you then correct the measured signal amplitude for any external gain or attenuation, convert signal amplitude to radiated intensity using the antenna factor (often referred to as the K-factor) for your antenna, and scale the field strength for the difference between the measurement distance and the required reference distance. There is ample opportunity for arithmetical errors. The 2711, however, performs the correction, conversion, and scaling for you. Enter the external gain or attenuation, antenna factor, and measurement distance using the INPUT Menu. Then select the $\text{dB}\mu\text{V/m}$ reference unit and the 2711 does the rest. The signal intensity is read out on screen using the marker, corrected for distance, in either $\text{dB}\mu\text{V/m}$ or volts/meter. Using the Display Menu, it is also possible to have the 2711 sound a high level audible alert if the measured signal exceeds a threshold that you set. This feature facilitates go/no-go or present/absent tests.

Figure 6-5 shows how to set up your equipment. A balun may be included as part of your antenna. The filter and external matching network are optional. The filter is intended primarily to prevent off-the-air signals, such as radio and television, from swamping the instrument. The matching network may be necessary for maximum accuracy. If in doubt, try the measurement with and without the network. If there is no difference, omit the network for maximum sensitivity.

The following formula relates the radiated field strength in dB relative to a microvolt per meter ($\text{dB}\mu\text{V/m}$) to the measured signal amplitude in dB relative to a milliwatt (dBm), and scales the result measured at a distance d_{meas} to a reference distance, d_{ref} . The reference distance is often specified by the regulatory agencies.

$$P_{\text{dB}\mu\text{V/m}} = P_{\text{dBm}} + 107 + 20 \log \left[\frac{d_{\text{meas}}}{d_{\text{ref}}} \right] - A + K$$

d_{meas} = distance from radiation source at which measurement is carried out

d_{ref} = reference distance at which the intensity is desired

A = attenuation or gain between antenna and instrument. If the filter is used, its gain or attenuation should be included in this number. If balun losses are not included in the antenna factor, they should be included here. Cable loss, if significant, can also be included here.

K = antenna factor; supplied by manufacturer or calculated from:

$$K = 20 \log f - G - 10 \log (19 * R_{\text{ant}})$$

G = antenna gain as a function of frequency

f = frequency of signal in MHz

R_{ant} = output resistance of the antenna or the balun, if the balun is treated as part of the antenna

COMMERCIAL BICONICAL ANTENNA WITH BALUN ATTACHED

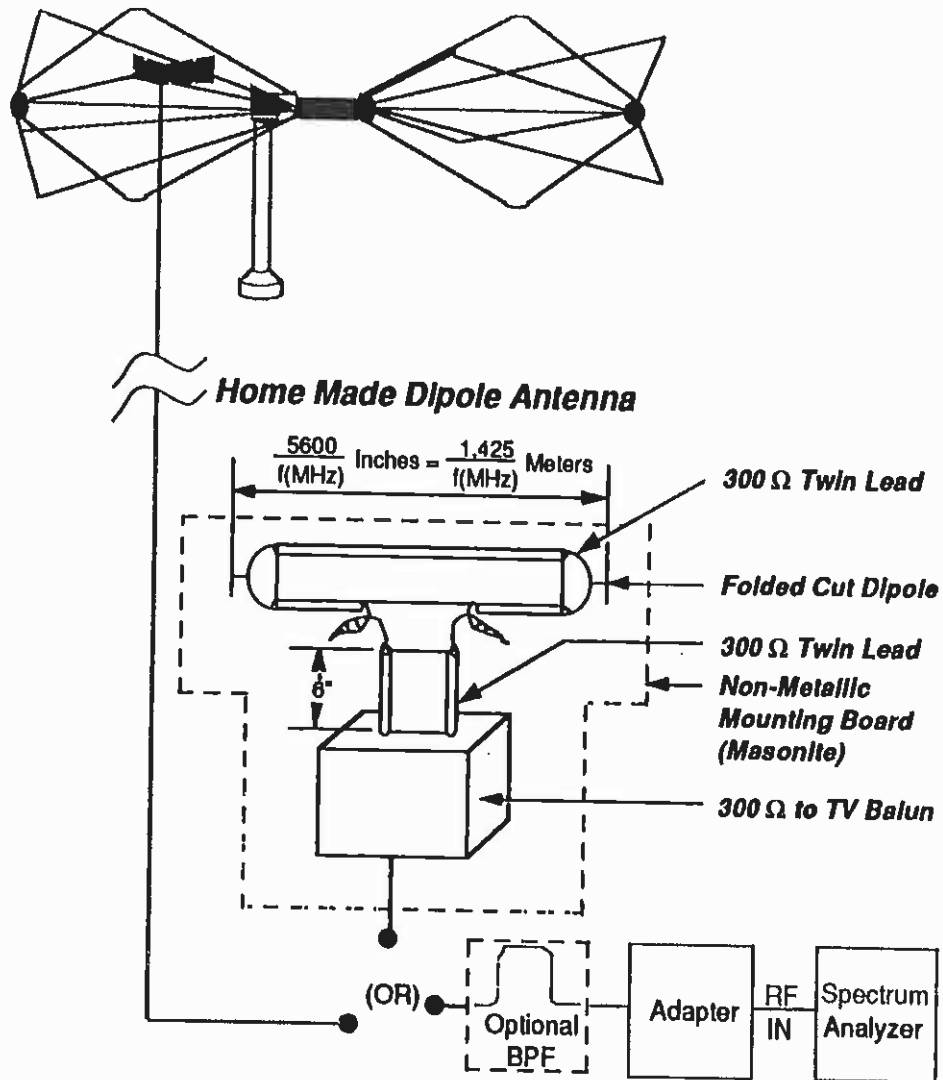


Figure 6-5. Equipment setup for field strength measurements.

With the 2711, you enter the attenuation using the EXTERNAL ATTEN/AMPL feature from the INPUT Menu, and the antenna factor, measurement distance, and reference distance using the DBUV/M SETUP under the REFERENCE LEVEL UNITS of the INPUT Menu. Note that many commercial antenna suppliers include the balun losses in the antenna factor. For the most accurate results, use an antenna calibrated at the specified reference distance and perform the measurement at that distance. If possible, measure the return loss of the antenna to make certain it is properly tuned to the desired frequency. See *Spectrum Analyzer Fundamentals*, Tektronix application note 26W-7037-1, concerning return loss measurements.

To use the dB μ V/m, follow this procedure:

- Select Item 3, REF LEVEL UNIT, from the INPUT Menu.
- Select Item 9, DBUV/M SETUP, from the REFERENCE LEVEL UNITS submenu.
- Select Item 6, MEASUREMENT DISTANCE, from the DBUV/M SETUP and enter the distance at which the measurement will actually be carried out (default distance is 3.0 m). You can enter distances in feet, meters, kilometers, or miles, but the 2711 converts them to meters or kilometers before displaying them.
- Repeatedly select Item 7, SAVE RESULTS IN WFMx, until the indicated register (A, B, C) is the one in which you want the resulting measurement to appear. The waveforms are repeatedly saved, deleted, saved, and so on until you terminate the dB μ V/m mode. At that point, the last sweep is retained in the selected register.
- Item 9, MARKER DISPLAY, controls whether the on-screen marker amplitude reads out in decibels relative to a microvolt per meter (DBUV/M) or directly in volts per meter (V/m). The reference unit does not change; only the marker amplitude readout changes. **Toggle Item 9 to select the units you prefer.** Table 6-1 also lists equivalent voltage and decibel values in 4 dB steps. Interpolate between values if closer results are required.

Table 6-1. Equivalent decibel - voltage values.

$\text{dB}\mu\text{V/m}$	0	4	8	12	16	
0	1	1.58	2.51	3.98	6.31	microvolt per meter
20	10	15.8	25.1	39.8	63.1	
40	100	158	251	398	631	
60	1	1.58	2.51	3.98	6.31	millivolt per meter
80	10	15.8	25.1	39.8	63.1	
100	0.1	0.158	0.251	0.398	0.631	volt per meter
120	1	1.58	2.51	3.98	6.31	

- Select the antenna number (1 – 5) which matches the antenna you are using.
- Press the [BKSP] key to return to REFERENCE LEVEL UNITS and select Item 5, DBUV/M IN WFM x.
- Press [INPUT] [6] and enter any external gain or attenuation (skip this step if none is present). This number should include the gain or attenuation of any external amplifier or filter, and the losses of any balun which are not included in the manufacturers K factor table for your antenna.
- Connect your antenna and proceed with your measurement. To obtain a measure of the maximum signal strength, save the measurement in the A or B register and select MAX HOLD. Rotate the antenna until the maximum reading is obtained.
- Turn on the marker and use it to read out the field strength directly in $\text{dB}\mu\text{V/m}$ or V/M.

While you are using the $\text{dB}\mu\text{V/m}$ unit, you cannot unsave (clear) the destination register or use the LIN, FM DEMODULATOR, or EXTERNAL SOURCE features (you also cannot select the $\text{dB}\mu\text{V/m}$ unit while using these features). Attempting to do so will result in an error message.

If you turn off the destination register while using the $\text{dB}\mu\text{V/m}$, this message is displayed:

DBUV/M MEASUREMENT MODE IDLE

The dB μ V/m measurement is not made while idling, and you still cannot unsave the destination register or use the LIN, FM DE-MODULATOR, or EXTERNAL SOURCE features.

To disable the dB μ V/m measurement mode, select any other reference unit.

If you are using an antenna for the first time, you must create an antenna table. Upon occasion you may also need to alter an existing table. Whether creating new antenna tables or changing old tables, all editing takes place in the "local buffer" or "editing buffer" using the EDIT ANTENNA TABLE selection from the DBUV/M SETUP on the INPUT Menu. New antenna data are written directly to the buffer prior to permanent storage; old data are loaded into the buffer prior to editing and re-storage. **If you wish to enter new antenna data or change old data, use this procedure:**

- **Select DBUV/M SETUP as above and then select Item 0, EDIT ANTENNA TABLE.**
- **To create a new antenna entry, select Item 6, ANTENNA SETUP. Enter the start, stop, and frequency steps (INC FREQUENCY) at which measurements will be made. Enter the reference distance. The reference distance is the distance to which you want the field strength referred. For maximum accuracy your antenna should be calibrated at the reference distance, and your measurement made at that distance. However, if you require another distance, enter it here. For instance, if you are making measurements at 10 meters, but want the field strength at 3 meters, then enter 3 meters. Press the [BKSP] key to return to EDIT ANTENNA TABLE. Item 0 will continue to indicate EMPTY at the end of the line because there are still no antenna factors in the local buffer.**
- **To edit an old antenna, select Item 3, LOAD, from the EDIT ANTENNA TABLE and choose the antenna you want to edit. If there is already something in the local buffer, you are given the choice:**

W = OVERWRITE LOCAL BUFFER
Z = ABORT

If you need the data currently in the local buffer, abort the procedure and store it. Otherwise, select the **W** option. After the antenna is loaded, its name (if it has one) or number is shown at the end of the first line of **EDIT ANTENNA TABLE** indicating that the antenna factors for that antenna have been loaded into the local buffer.

- If you attempt to change the frequencies at which you plan to use an antenna, whether it is a newly created antenna or an old one, you must delete the local buffer and start over as though it is a new antenna. To delete the local buffer, select item 4, **DELETE**, from **EDIT ANTENNA TABLE** and then select item 6, **EDITING BUFFER**. Confirm the deletion by pressing **[W]** and proceed as though you are creating a new antenna table.
- After you have loaded an old antenna table or established the frequency range and calibration distance for a new one, select item 0 from **EDIT ANTENNA TABLE**. A list of frequencies beginning with the start frequency and ending with the stop frequency appears. The numbers to the right of the frequencies are the antenna factors, or K-factors. When creating antenna tables, the 2711 supplies default values of zero for the K-factors. To begin changing the antenna factors, press **[W]** and enter the appropriate factor. The asterisk indicates which factor is to be edited. After you enter a value for a factor, the asterisk moves to the next frequency. If you do not want to change the antenna factor at the indicated frequency, turn the **FREQ/MKRS** knob to move the asterisk to the desired frequency.

For instance, suppose an antenna manufacturer specifies the antenna factors for his antenna as:

f	k	f	k	f	k
.....	55.0	2.7	60.0	3.5
51.0	2.1	56.0	2.9	61.0	3.6
52.0	2.3	57.0	3.0	62.0	3.8
53.0	2.4	58.0	3.2	63.0	3.9
54.0	2.5	59.0	3.3

Then to make measurements from 55 to 60 MHz, the entries in the antenna table should look like this:

1>	55.000000 :	2.7
2>	56.000000 :	2.9
3>	57.000000 :	3.0
4>	58.000000 :	3.2
5>	59.000000 :	3.3
6>	60.000000 :	3.5

- If you are creating a new antenna table, press [Z] to exit (return to EDIT ANTENNA TABLE) after the last entry has been completed. If you are editing an existing table, press [W] after your last entry. Then press [Z] to return to EDIT ANTENNA TABLE.
- Naming antennas is not required, but names can provide quick reminders of the purpose of each antenna. To name an antenna, select item 1, TITLE EDIT. Press [W] to begin editing. If an old antenna table is being modified, its name appears at the upper left with an underscore cursor beneath the first letter. If the antenna table is new, only the cursor appears. You can delete the old name entirely by pressing [Y]. [Z] aborts the title editing process without changes. To change the title, turn the FREQ/MKRS knob to select letters. Use [MKR ←] or [MKR →] to move the cursor back and forth. When the title is complete, press [X].
- To store the antenna data and title, select Item 2, STORE, and choose any unused antenna number. The new or modified antenna table will be stored under that number. Its name is displayed adjacent to the number. If you do not name the antenna, it is given a name of ANTENNA #. If all five antenna tables are already in use, you will have to delete an existing antenna before you can store the new or modified table. For instance, suppose you have modified an existing antenna table and wish to store the modified version in the place of the original table using the same antenna name. Even though the name and location are the same, you must first delete the original antenna table. Deleting the original antenna from the

antenna list does not delete the edited version in the local buffer. After you delete the original, store the edited version in the original location.

- You can print the antenna data if your 2711 is equipped with an optional communications port and appropriate printer. To print the antenna data, select item 5, **PRINT**, from **EDIT ANTENNA TABLE** and simply choose the antenna data you want to print from the resulting list.
- The **DISPLAY LINE** feature ([DSPL] [8]) can be used with the dB μ V/m for making vehicular surveys of leakage from cable TV installations, or in other applications where an audible alert is useful whenever a signal amplitude crosses a preset threshold. To sound a high level alert whenever the measured RF field strength exceeds the threshold, set the **DISPLAY LINE** at the desired threshold. See *The Display Line and Limit Detector* in this section for complete details.

To look for very low amplitude RF energy, you can turn on the 2711's preamplifier. Actual sensitivity depends upon the antenna used and losses in cabling and coupling to the instrument. With minimum cable losses and an antenna that matches the 50 Ω instrument impedance, you should be able to see signals ranging from about 2 dB μ V/m (1.3 μ V/m) at 55 MHz to 14 dB μ V/m (5 μ V/m) at 216 MHz.

If greater sensitivity is required, three options are possible:

- Provide an external preamplifier.
- Use a higher gain antenna. Sensitivity increases directly as antenna gain.
- If the signal being measured is narrow-band, reduce the resolution bandwidth to the narrowest setting still capable of passing the signal. For instance, the 3 kHz filter setting increases sensitivity by 20 dB over the 300 kHz filter.

100.0MHZ	(AUTO SWEEP)	ATTN 10DB
-20.0DBM		VF WIDE
20.0MHZ/		10 DB/
5MHZ RBW (AUTO)	CALIBRATOR	

MKR/FREQ



With the MKR/FREQ (Marker/Frequency) Menu you can control the frequency characteristics of the display and control the markers in ways not available from the front panel.

Setting the Start and Stop Frequencies

Perhaps you would prefer to directly specify the beginning and ending frequencies of the display rather than its center frequency and span. The 2711 enables you to do so. **To set the display start and stop frequencies, press:**

[MKR/FREQ]

From the resulting menu, select Item 7, **FREQUENCY START/STOP**. A submenu appears enabling you to specify start and stop frequencies for the spectral display. Choose Item 0 and, following the prompt, press:

[1] [7] [5] [MHz]

to specify a start frequency of 175 MHz. Note that the indicated start frequency has changed. Now choose Item 1 and enter a value of 425 MHz for the stop frequency. Return to the spectral display by pressing **[MKR/FREQ]**. The center frequency is 300 MHz and the span is 25 MHz/division, making the start and stop frequencies 175 MHz and 425 MHz respectively. If you make the start frequency greater than the stop frequency, the instrument enters ZERO SPAN mode tuned to the start frequency.

Using Markers To Set Start and Stop Frequencies

You can also set the start and stop frequencies with the markers. This method provides a visually intuitive approach to span control, enabling you to designate only that portion of the displayed spectrum which is of particular interest.

Turn on the marker and place it just to the left of the calibration signal harmonic at 300 MHz. Enter delta-marker mode and place the active marker just to the right of the harmonic at 400 MHz. Select item 6, **MARKER START/STOP**, from the **MKR/FREQ Menu**.

The spectral display reappears and brackets the calibration signal's third and fourth harmonics. The marker start/stop selection automatically adjusts the starting frequency of the display and the span/division so that any signals located between the markers are displayed. If you are not in delta-marker mode when you select **MARKER START/STOP**, the instrument will enter zero span at the current center or marker frequency.

Now turn off the markers. Notice that the resolution bandwidth has also changed because **RES BW** was in **AUTO** mode.

300.0MHZ	(AUTO SWEEP)	ATTN 10DB
-20.0DBM		VF WIDE
50.0MHZ/		10 DB/
5MHZ RBW (AUTO)	CALIBRATOR	

Transposing Markers

Now suppose you want to measure the difference in frequency between the peaks at 300 MHz and 500 MHz, and between 500 MHz and 200 MHz. To do so, enter marker mode, and position the marker on the 300 MHz peak. Enter delta-marker mode and place the active marker on the 500 MHz peak.

The difference is 200 MHz. Now choose item 5, **TRANSPOSE MARKERS**, from the **MKR/FREQ Menu**. Turn the **FREQ/MKRS** knob. The movable marker has become the reference and the old reference is now the movable marker. Move the marker to the 200 MHz peak and note the frequency difference.

Exit from delta-marker mode.

100.0MHZ	(AUTO SWEEP)	ATTN 10DB
-20.0DBM		VF WIDE
20.0MHZ/		10 DB/
5MHZ RBW (AUTO)	CALIBRATOR	

Changing the Knob Function

This feature enables you to select one of up to four parameters to be controlled by the **FREQ/MKRS** knob. The knob is normally used to vary the center/start frequency or marker position, but if the Video Monitor (10) and Tracking Generator (04) options are installed, you can also vary the video line selection and TG tracking.

To see how this feature is used to make precision frequency difference measurements, enter delta-marker mode with both markers at the calibrator signal peak. Next you will measure the frequency difference between the cal signal and each of its harmonics, but you could use the same procedure to measure any series of signals.

To change the knob function, call up the MKR/FREQ Menu and select Item 2, KNOB FUNCTION. The KNOB FUNCTION Menu appears. Currently, the knob is controlling the markers, as you would expect in delta-marker mode. Select Item 0 from the KNOB FUNCTION Menu to change to frequency control and then press [MKR/FREQ] two times. The spectral display reappears and seems unchanged.

However, watch what happens as you rotate the FREQ/MKRS knob several clicks clockwise. Notice how the center frequency increases and the spectrum slides to the left. One marker remains fixed atop the cal signal peak while the other remains fixed at center screen. Consequently, the difference frequency also increases. Continue turning the knob until the second harmonic approaches center screen. Press [CTR-MEAS/TRKG]. The second harmonic is automatically centered. The amplitude and frequency difference between the fundamental and the harmonic are displayed at the top of the right column preceded by D or DC (delta count for the 2711 Option 02). Repeat this procedure for the third harmonic. Notice that although the

reference peak (the calibration signal fundamental) is now far off-screen to the left, you are still accurately measuring the difference frequency.

You may continue this process all the way to 1.8 GHz. Try **measuring several harmonics. Exit from this mode by turning off the markers.**

This feature is particularly useful when you want to measure the differences between two or more signals so widely separated in frequency that they do not fit on the screen at the span/division at which you wish to view them. If you're already using the MKR/FREQ Menu, Item 2 also conveniently turns on marker mode when it is set to MKR.

If you trigger a 2711 that has Option 10 (Video Monitor) with a TV video sync pulse by choosing KNOB SELECTABLE from the SWP/TRIG Menu Setup Table, the KNOB FUNCTION Menu offers another choice: VIDEO LINE. Selecting VIDEO LINE lets you use the FREQ/MKRS knob to control which TV line triggers the sweep. Selecting FREQUENCY or MARKER continues to let you control the center or marker frequency. This feature enables you to conveniently switch between frequency and TV line control. This can be very useful when viewing multiple TV channels. You can select FREQUENCY for changing channels and then to VIDEO LINE for choosing the line number. For a complete explanation of TV LINE trigger mode, see *TV Line Triggering* later in this section.

If the Tracking Generator option (04) is installed in your 2711 and turned on, still another choice of knob function is possible: TG TRACKING. The knob now varies the frequency by which the tracking generator output frequency differs from the frequency currently being scanned. This makes it possible to peak the response of narrow filters and to compensate for the signal delay encountered when testing long cables (the signal received at the end of the cable is delayed and, hence, differs in frequency from that currently being scanned).

300.0MHZ	(AUTO SWEEP)	ATTN 10DB
-20.0DBM		VF WIDE
50.0MHZ/		10 DB/
5MHZ RBW (AUTO)	CALIBRATOR	

Moving the Marker To the Next Higher or Lower Peak

The front-panel controls enable you to move the marker to the next signal peak to the left or right, but the MKR/FREQ Menu enables you to jump the marker from peak to peak in ascending order of amplitude, and then jump down again in descending order.

Turn on the single marker and place it in the noise. Select Item 4 from the MKR/FREQ Menu and then press [W]. The marker is now atop the lowest of the calibration signal harmonics. Select Item 4 and press [W] again. The marker is now atop the second lowest peak. Repeat this process until the marker reaches the highest peak (the fundamental). After the marker is on the highest peak, select Item 4 and press [X]. Repeat this process several times and watch the marker jump to progressively lower peaks. If you try to jump the marker above the highest peak or below the lowest, you are told:

NO SIGNAL FOUND ABOVE THRESHOLD

You cannot jump the marker to off-screen signals.

Marker To the Reference Level

MARKER TO REFERENCE LEVEL is an item on the MKR/FREQ Menu that can be used to quickly and easily determine signal amplitudes.

Using any method, (for instance, the MOVE MARKER TO NEXT PEAK feature), place the marker atop the signal to be measured. In this case, use the calibration signal fundamental. With the marker at the signal peak, press [MRK/FREQ] [3].

The reference level is changed to the signal amplitude. This is a convenient way to place signals at the reference level for making relative measurements. It is also a useful method of setting the

video carrier to the reference level when using the Video Monitor option.

When you are finished, turn off the marker.

NOTE

Signal amplitudes are always determined most accurately when the signal is within one division of the reference level.

300.0MHZ	(AUTO SWEEP)	ATTN 10DB
-20.0DBM		VF WIDE
50.0MHZ/		10 DB/
5MHZ RBW (AUTO)	CALIBRATOR	

Selecting the Tuning Increment

The tuning increment (amount per click by which the tuning knob changes frequency) is 0.02 of the span/division. You are now going to learn how this can be changed. Call up the MKR/FREQ Menu and examine Item 8. It is a three-way toggle function indicating the tuning increment is presently being automatically selected. In AUTO mode, the tuning increment is:

Zero span:

.033 of the resolution BW for 3 kHz and 30 kHz filters

20 kHz for the 300 kHz filter

200 kHz for the 5 MHz filter

All other spans:

0.02 of the span/division (because of the readout resolution, this appears as 3 and 4 MHz on alternate clicks of the knob in MAX SPAN)

Slowly press [8] three times.

The tuning increment progresses from AUTO to PROGRMD (programmed) to TABULAR and back to AUTO again. If programmed tuning is selected (see *Programmed Tuning* later in this section), you can specify whether the center frequency, marker frequency, or keypad entered frequency increment will be used as the tuning increment. If tabular tuning is selected (see *Tabular Tuning* later in this section), the tuning increment varies according to tables of values permanently stored in memory. Tables exist for standard broadcast and cable TV channel allocations.

Center or Start Frequency

Next, examine the setup table. **Choose Item 9 from the MKR/FREQ Menu.**

A secondary menu of five items appears. The first item toggles frequency control between center and start frequency. When start frequency is selected, the FREQ/MKRS knob controls the frequency at the left edge of the display rather than the frequency at the center. **Choose Item 0 from the setup table.** The spectral display reappears but the "center frequency" bright spot is now moved to the left edge of the screen and the frequency readout is:

SF 300MHZ

indicating that the start frequency is now 300 MHz. Some users prefer to run the instrument in this mode. This feature can be useful for viewing sidebands or performing harmonic distortion measurements.

Toggle back to center frequency control by pressing [MKR/FREQ] [9] [0].

Setting the Signal Threshold

Earlier you discovered there was a threshold below which the 2711 will not automatically detect signal peaks. Normally the instrument estimates the peak amplitude of the minimum displayed signal (which usually represents the noise floor) and sets the threshold

one division higher. However, when the displayed signal is everywhere greater than the noise, the instrument sets the threshold in proportion to the signal peaks rather than the noise floor. The threshold is then artificially high, and may result in other signals which rise only slightly above the threshold being ignored. Consequently, item 0 of the MKR/FREQ Menu has been provided to enable you to set the threshold to a fixed amplitude suitable for detecting the signals present in your particular application. The fixed threshold is also useful when you simply want to exclude low-level signals while jumping the marker between high level peaks.

To set the threshold, choose Item 0 from the MKR/FREQ Menu and, following the prompts, enter a value of -45 dBm. Press [MKR/FREQ] to return to the spectral display. Using either the MOVE MARKER selection from the MKR/FREQ Menu or the marker arrow keys, attempt to move the marker from peak to peak. It will only jump to the peaks above -45 dBm in amplitude.

Turn off the marker and restore automatic threshold selection by pressing

[MKR/FREQ] [0] [W]

Then return to the spectral display.

Counter Resolution (Option 02 Only)

When equipped with Option 02, the 2711 enables you to change the resolution of its built-in counter. It is possible to specify the resolution as 1 kHz or 1 Hz, or to turn off the counter when Signal Track mode is in use. Be aware that this feature only changes the counter resolution to one Hertz, not the accuracy (see *CTR-MEAS/TRKG* in section 5 for a discussion of frequency measurement accuracies).

Press [MKR/FREQ] [9] [1]. Under COUNTER RESOLUTION, select Item 0, COUNTER OFF WHEN TRKG. Press [CTR-MEAS/TRKG] and notice the counter reads out to 1 Hz. Enter TRKG mode and note that there is no counter reading.

Return to **COUNTER RESOLUTION** and select **1 KHZ**. Notice the counter is now reading in **TRKG** mode. When you select items 1 or 2, the counter reads out to the indicated resolution in either **CTR-MEAS** or **TRKG**. Because it takes longer to update the display when the counter is reading out, turning it off speeds up the signal tracking capability.

Select Item 0 from **COUNTER RESOLUTION**, and then turn off the **TRKG** mode and the markers.

300.0MHZ	(AUTO SWEEP)	ATTN 10DB
-20.0DBM		VF WIDE
50.0MHZ/		10 DB/
5MHZ RBW (AUTO)	CALIBRATOR	

Programmed Tuning

Next you will experiment with the programmed tuning increments. Choose Item 1 from the **MKR/FREQ** Menu. The **PROGRAMMED TUNING INCREMENT** Menu appears. Programmed tuning increments can be designated by the center or start frequency, the marker or delta-marker frequency, or numeric keypad entries.

The current center frequency is approximately 300 MHz. To select the center frequency as the tuning increment, press [0]. The spectral display reappears. Turn the **FREQ/MKRS** knob one click clockwise. The frequency changed 300 MHz in one click. That is what you selected as the tuning increment. Turn the knob another click. It should be 900 MHz. Now reset the center frequency to 300 MHz.

Turn on the marker. Position the marker at 150 MHz. Again select Item 1 from the **MKR/FREQ** Menu. Now choose Item 1, which currently reads **MARKER FREQ**, from the **PROGRAMMED TUNING INCREMENT** Menu to select the marker frequency as the tuning increment. Turn off the marker and turn the **FREQ/MKRS** knob one click. The center frequency should change to 450 MHz.

Reset the frequency to approximately 300 MHz. Turn on the marker and position it on the calibration signal fundamental at 100 MHz. Enter delta-marker mode and place the movable marker on the second harmonic at 200 MHz. From the PROGRAMMED TUNING INCREMENT Menu select Item 1 which now reads DELTA MKR FREQ. Turn off the markers and turn the FREQ/MKRS knob one click.

The frequency now changes by one harmonic (100 MHz) per click. When making distortion measurements, this is one way to look at positions where harmonics should be present. Anytime you require measurements at multiples of a frequency difference, but do not want to enter the frequencies, the delta-marker tuning increment mode provides a quick, convenient method.

Return to the PROGRAMMED TUNING INCREMENT Menu. You are going to specify a particular tuning increment. Choose Item 3, KEYPAD ENTRY, and enter a value of 7 MHz. The spectral display reappears. Turn the FREQ/MKRS knob. The frequency changes by 7 MHz per click, a value not otherwise available. Entering a keypad tuning increment automatically places the 2711 in programmed tuning mode.

You can turn off any programmed increment, including the keypad entered increment, in two ways. **First, toggle item 8 on the MKR/FREQ Menu to read AUTO. This turns off the keypad value and restores automatic selection of the tuning increment. Second, select the programmed tuning increment from the MKR/FREQ Menu and choose item 4 (RETURN TO AUTO) from the PROGRAMMED TUNING INCREMENT Menu. This also turns off the keypad value and restores automatic selection of the tuning increment.**

Turn the keypad increment back on by selecting PROGRMD TUNING INC from the MKR/FREQ Menu, and choosing Item 2, KEYPAD ENTRD INC.

Now turn off the keypad selected increment.

100.0MHZ	(AUTO SWEEP)	ATTN 10DB
-20.0DBM		VF WIDE
20.0MHZ/		10 DB/
5MHZ RBW (AUTO)	CALIBRATOR	

Tabular Tuning

Call up the MKR/FREQ Menu Setup Table and select item 2, **TABULAR TUNING TABLES**. A table appears offering you a number of choices. Choose Item 0 from the **TABULAR TUNING TABLE**, and then press the backspace key twice to return to the MKR/FREQ Menu. Toggle Item 8 until:

TABULAR

appears at the end of the line. Press [MKR/FREQ] to return to the spectral display. Turn the FREQ/MKRS knob one click counter-clockwise. The frequency is 87.7 MHz. Turn the knob three more clicks. The indicated frequencies are 83.2 MHz, 81.7 MHz, and 77.2 MHz. The instrument is stepping through the visual and aural carrier frequencies of US broadcast TV stations. It will step through the entire range of VHF and UHF stations. Had you chosen one of the other items from the **TABULAR TUNING TABLE**, the instrument would have stepped through the various TV assignments specific to those settings. Tabular tuning can be a great convenience if you work in the video communications industry:

Restore tuning Increment selection to automatic.

300.0MHZ	(AUTO SWEEP)	ATTN 10DB
-20.0DBM		VF WIDE
20.0MHZ/		10 DB/
5MHZ RBW (AUTO)	CALIBRATOR	

Frequency Offsets

The MKR/FREQ Setup Table also enables you to offset the on-screen center frequency readout. In this mode the center frequency is not actually changed, and the counter readout (Option 02) still indicates the true frequency rather than the offset value. This feature is intended to allow the output frequencies of block down converters (LNB's) used in video communications and other industries to be correctly indicated. However, it can be used anytime a signal has been shifted in frequency by a known amount, and you want to display its frequency prior to shifting.

Suppose the signal to be viewed is the output of a down converter with a 5.15 GHz local oscillator. **Call up the MKR/FREQ SETUP TABLE and select Item 3, FRQ OFFSET. Enter an offset of 5.15 GHz (Ignore the CALIBRATOR DOESN'T MATCH READ-OUT warning). Notice that the status of Item 4, FREQ OFFSET MODE, changed from OFF to ON PLUS. Select Item 4 several times. The status of the frequency offset cycles through OFF - ON PLUS - ON MINUS. Leave the offset set to ON PLUS and return to the spectral display. The center frequency is now indicated as 5450.0MHZ OFST (300 MHz + 5150 MHz offset).**

Press [CTR-MEAS/TRKG]. If your 2711 has a counter, the counter readout still indicates the true center frequency. Turn on the marker and turn the MKR/FREQ knob clockwise. The marker frequency is also increased by 5.15 GHz.

Return to the MKR/FREQ Setup Table and toggle Item 4 to ON MINUS. Return to the spectral display. The center frequency now reads 4850.0MHZ OFST and the marker reads progressively lower frequencies as it moves to the right.

The frequency axis appears to be reversed because the output frequency of the converter can be represented as:

$$f_{out} = |f_{sig} \pm f_{lo}|$$

Any time the local oscillator in the frequency converter is above the frequency of the original signal, the output frequencies are reversed. That is, the higher the input signal frequency, the lower the output frequency. This is exactly the process that occurs in C-band block down converters. Therefore, you use ON MINUS when viewing their output. Ku-band converters, on the other hand, have local oscillator frequencies below the input signal frequency, and you use ON PLUS when viewing their output signals.

300.0MHZ	(AUTO SWEEP)	ATTN 10DB
-40.0DBM		VF WIDE
20.0MHZ/		10 DB/
5MHZ RBW (AUTO)	CALIBRATOR	

DSPL



The DSPL (Display) Menu enables you to change the appearance of the display screen and the signals presented on it. From the Display Menu, you can:

- Switch between analog and digital display modes
- Ensemble average spectra
- Directly subtract a stored trace from an active trace
- Switch between MAX/MIN and PEAK signal acquisition modes
- Title and label displays and plots
- Turn the graticule lights on and off
- Change the source of the display from an internal to an external signal
- Control an on-screen reference line to simplify amplitude measurements and establish alarm thresholds.
- Enable and disable the Min Hold feature

Changing the Display Mode

You can place the 2711 in analog display mode by turning off all the display registers using the [A], [B], [C], and [D] keys (see **Display Storage** in section 5). However, a more convenient method when two or more registers are active, is to use item 0 from the DSPL Menu. Item 0 is a toggle function that switches the 2711 between analog and digital display modes.

If the 2711 is in digital display mode, pressing item 0 turns off all display registers (enters analog display mode).

When in analog mode, pressing item 0 performs one of two actions:

- If analog mode was entered using item 0, then the register configuration prior to entering analog mode is restored.
- If analog mode was entered by manually turning off all registers with the [A], [B], [C], and [D] keys, then the last register turned off is reactivated.

Ensure the C and D display registers are active. Save the C register and then change the center frequency to 280 MHz so you can distinguish the two active traces.

Press [DSPL] [0]. Notice that only the analog signal remains.

Press [DSPL] [0] again. Both the saved C digital display and the current D digital display return (the same register configuration that was in use prior to entering analog mode by selecting item 0).

Turn on the B register, and then turn off all registers in the order D, C, B. Now press [DSPL] [0]. Notice that the B register, the last one turned off, is the only one reactivated.

Reset the center frequency to 300 MHz and turn on only the D register.

Ensemble Averaging

In general, ensemble averaging techniques are used for the same reason as filters; to enhance the desired-signal-to-unwanted-noise ratio. Narrow resolution bandwidth or video filters reduce the noise by reducing the spectrum analyzer's bandwidth. Unfortunately, they also require slower sweep speeds, and in the cases of broadband signals, the filters may limit the signal energy. For these applications, you can use ensemble averaging. However, if ensemble averaging is used with pulsed waveforms without taking special care to synchronize the instrument to the signal, erroneous measurements result. This is because of the way scanning spectrum analyzers determine the spectrum of pulsed signals. See Tektronix application note 26W-7037-1, *Spectrum Analyzer Fundamentals*, for more information about pulse measurements.

Ensemble averaging computes the average value of some parameter (peak, mean, minimum, etc.) of a number of signal spectra. If the nature of the signal does not change during the period over which the average is compiled, the parameter being averaged rapidly approaches its mean value. This results in an enhancement of the signal-to-noise ratio without reducing the bandwidth or slowing the sweep speed. Ensemble averaging may be applied to continuous, narrow-band signals as well, but in those cases video filtering often proves faster and more convenient.

The result of the ensemble average is an estimate of the mean value of the parameter being averaged. The estimate is also a random variable. That is, successive estimates, or averages, will vary from each other in a random fashion. However, the random variability is less than that encountered with a single sweep, and therein lies the advantage of ensemble averaging. The larger the number of sweeps averaged, the more accurate an estimate of the spectral characteristic that is obtained.

Call up the DSPL Menu by pressing [DSPL]. Select Item 1, ENSEMBLE AVERAGING.

The ENSEMBLE AVERAGING Menu appears. Items 1 and 2 start and stop the averaging process. The remaining items specify which values to average, how many sweeps to average, and where to store the result.

If you are going to store just the one ensemble average, it makes little difference where you save it. You can use registers A, B, or C, but you cannot store the average in a register which already contains data. Register D is not available because it always contains the current trace. If you plan to use the stored average as a reference and perhaps intend to subtract it from other spectra, you must store it in register A. Whichever register is used, it must be cleared before you attempt to store new data in it or you'll receive an error message.

Item 8 of the DSPL Menu is a three-way toggle that switches between registers in the sequence A, B, C, A.... **Ensure that register A is clear and then repeatedly press [8] until the last character on the line is A.**

You can average a fixed number of spectra or choose continuous averaging. Continuous, or running, averages are used when the mean value of the signal you are viewing can change slowly with time, when you want to watch a mean value estimate change in real time, or when you simply wish to continuously monitor a process.

If you select a fixed ensemble size, you can average up to 1024 sweeps. The 2711 then computes:

$$\text{PARAMETER AVG (f)} = \sum_{i=1}^N \frac{1}{N} \text{PARAMETER}_{\text{sweep } i}(\text{f})$$

where N is the number of sweeps to be averaged, f is frequency, and the parameter being averaged can be the maximum, minimum, max/min, or mean of the spectral display. Averaging begins when item 1 is selected from the ENSEMBLE AVERAGING Menu and ends when the Nth sweep has been completed. You can also stop the averaging by selecting item 2 from the menu.

Continuous averaging works differently. Until ten sweeps have been accumulated, the continuous average looks exactly like the fixed ensemble average; but after the Nth sweep the continuous average approaches:

$$\text{PARAMETER AVG (f)} = 0.1 \sum_{i=1}^N (.9)^{N-i} \text{PARAMETER}_{\text{sweep } i}(\text{f})$$

That is, continuous averaging weights older sweeps so that they have a progressively smaller effect on the average. Each step back in time reduces the impact of a sweep to 90 per cent of its previous value.

The factory default setting is a 16-sweep fixed average. **You will change the number to 24. Choose Item 7 from the ENSEMBLE AVERAGING Menu. Enter 24 by pressing [2] [4] [W]. Item 7 will update as you press [W].**

You are now ready to compile a parameter average. There are four choices. You have used the max/min display almost exclusively thus far, so begin with this setting. **Choose Item 6, MAX/MIN, from the ENSEMBLE AVERAGING Menu. To start averaging, press [1].**

The spectral display reappears and both status indicators for register A light. At the bottom of the right-hand readout column the number of sweeps averaged is displayed. When all 24 sweeps have been included in the average, the readout stops indicating the number unless the A register is the only one turned on. **Turn the D register on and off several times.** Most of the sweep-to-sweep variations in the noise have disappeared.

Now repeat the experiment, this time storing the MAX average in register B. In this case, only the 256 maximum values of each max/min sweep are averaged and stored.

Press [DSPL] [1] [3] to select MAX. Toggle Item 8 to register B and select Item 1 to start the averaging process. Both status indicators for register B light. The average peak value almost coincides with the upper edge of the MAX/MIN average. **Turn off the A register to see the average maximum by itself.**

Turn the A register back on. To store the MIN average in register C, press [DSPL] [1] [5] [8], and then select Item 1 from the ENSEMBLE AVERAGING Menu to start.

Both status indicators for register C light. Here, too, the average minimum coincides closely with the lower edge of the MAX/MIN average. In computing the average MIN, the 256 minimum points from each max/min sweep are used.

To store the MEAN value of the spectrum in register A, press [DSPL] [1] [4] [8], and then select Item 1 to start. At the prompt, press [W] to overwrite the previously stored max/min average.

The mean value of the noise appears to be half way between the max and min values. The average MEAN is what you get if you add successive maximum and minimum values in dB from the MAX/MIN display, divide by two, and average the results. The MEAN average is a "visual mean", not a true mean. As you will see below, it can be very useful in making weak signals visible.

Turn on the D register to see the current sweep with its visual mean and average maximum and minimum values superimposed. The mean along with the max and min values provide an estimate of the variability of the signal.

Notice that the signal peak amplitude does not change. This is because the calibration signal is essentially constant (little or no variability), so its min, max, and mean amplitude are all about the same. This can be used to advantage. Turn off the A, B, and C registers. Set the reference level to +10 dBm. The calibration signal's third harmonic is almost lost in the noise. Now ensemble average the spectrum MEAN values and store the result in A. The mean spectrum clearly reveals the location of the signal peak. Sometimes you can achieve even better results using the average minimum.

Experiment if you like before proceeding, then clear all registers and leave only the D register active.

400.0MHZ	(AUTO SWEEP)	ATTN 10DB
-20.0DBM		VF WIDE
100.0MHZ/		10 DB/
5MHZ RBW (AUTO)	CALIBRATOR	

Subtracting Stored Signals

The B,C MINUS A feature of the DSPL Menu enables you to subtract a sweep stored in register A from an active sweep in registers B or C. Using it, you can flatten a noise spectrum, negate unwanted signals, and easily detect signal changes. You can probably find more uses.

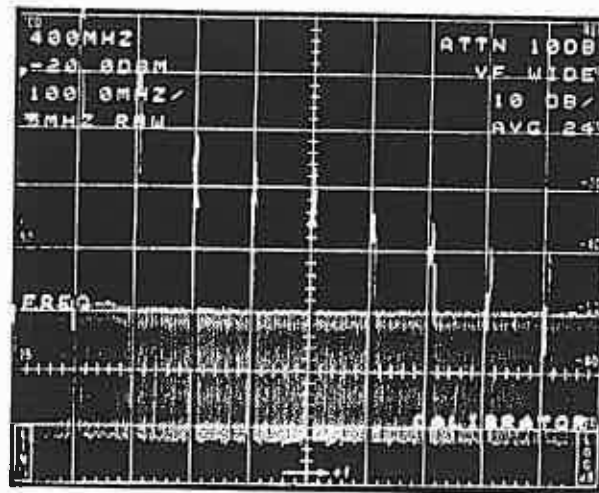
Observe the current sweep, especially the zero-frequency and calibration signal peaks (It should resemble the upper display in Figure 6-6). In your instrument the noise floor may rise slightly with increasing frequency. Perform a 24 sweep MAX/MIN ensemble average and store the result in A. Wait until the ensemble is complete. Ensure Item 3 of the Display Menu reads:

B,C MINUS A OFFSET TO CENTER

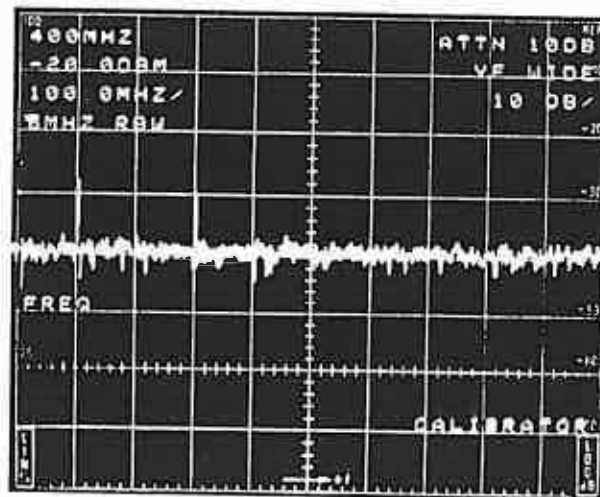
If it does not, select Item 3 once. Then, to activate the B,C MINUS A mode, press [DSPL] [2]. Turn on the B register and turn off A and D.

The display now consists of a much-reduced, flattened noise floor and some intermittent peaks similar to Figure 6-6 (lower display). The zero-frequency and calibration signal peaks have almost disappeared. You have subtracted the average max/min spectrum stored in the A register from the active sweep in the B register (you can also use the C register), and are displaying the result which consists only of the sweep-by-sweep variations. The vertical center of the screen represents zero amplitude difference between the waveforms.

Waveform subtraction can be used as a sensitive detector of signal changes. Suppose you were trying to measure a weak signal which you could turn on and off, in the presence of interfering noise and signals. You could turn the signal off, compile the ensemble average and subtract it as above. Then, when you turn the weak signal back on, it would be revealed because it was not part of the stored average.



Average of
calibration
signal plus
noise.



Average of
calibration
signal plus
noise
subtracted
from current
sweep.

Figure 6-6. Average signal plus noise and average signal-plus-noise subtracted from the current sweep.

Decrease the reference level 10 dB. The calibration signal peaks appear. **Increase the reference level by 20 dB.** The technique works no matter the direction of the signal change. **Reset the reference level to -20 dBm and change the center frequency slightly.** Again the calibration signal peaks appear. Any change from the average, either amplitude or frequency becomes obvious.

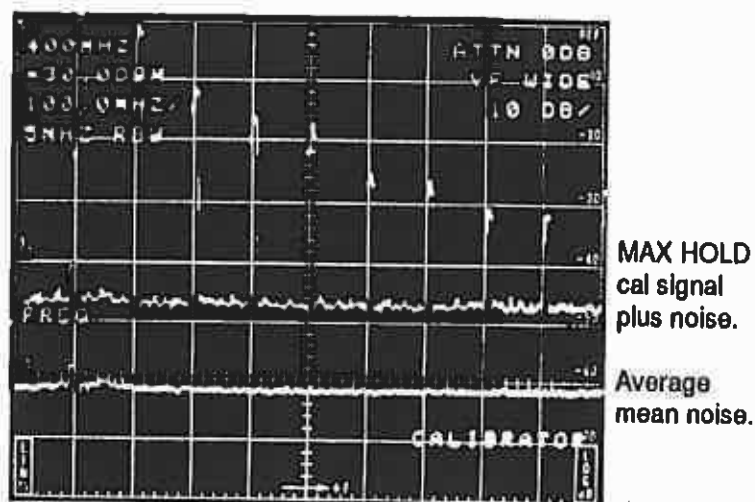


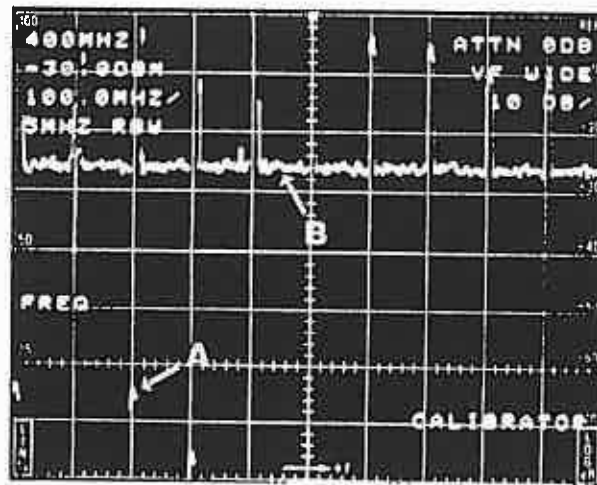
Figure 6-7. Average MEAN noise and MAX HOLD signal-plus-noise spectra.

It is possible for the waveform in B to be so much larger than that in A that the result goes off-screen. Next you will subtract the average MEAN noise from the MAX HOLD signal-plus-noise to make a measurement under these conditions. This process provides a measure of the maximum signal variations about the mean noise level.

Toggle out of B, C MINUS A mode ([DSPL] [2]). Ensure the center frequency is set to 400 MHz and the reference level to -30 dBm. Now turn off the calibrator and store a 24 sweep MEAN average of the noise in register A (you will need to overwrite the display currently stored in register A). After the average is complete, turn the calibrator on and activate MAX HOLD in register B. The resulting traces are shown in Figure 6-7.

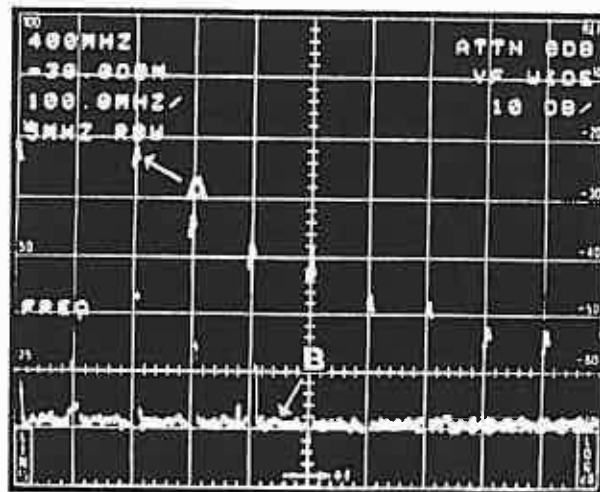
Turn off the A register and enter B, C MINUS A mode. The resulting noise floor is approximately two divisions below the reference level, but some of the calibration signal peaks fold over and point downward. See Figure 6-8.

Press [DSPL] [3]. The waveform is now near the bottom of the screen where you can see it more clearly. You have offset the difference between the B and A register waveforms, which is always greater than zero, to the top of the screen (zero difference



Note folded-over signal peaks at 100, 200, and 300 MHz.

Figure 6-8. B, C MINUS A OFFSET TO CENTER.



Signal peaks no longer folded-over.

Figure 6-9. B, C MINUS A OFFSET TO TOP.

is at the reference level). However, because of the 2711's internal signal processing, values above the reference level overflow into the sign bit of the data word and appear at the bottom of the screen. See Figure 6-8. The points labeled A and B in Figures 6-8 and 6-9 have exactly the same value in each figure.

Experiment if you wish before proceeding, and then clear all registers, turn on register D only, turn off B,C MINUS A, turn off MAX HOLD, and reset the B, C MINUS A offset to center.

100.0MHZ	(AUTO SWEEP)	ATTN 10DB
-20.0DBM		VF WIDE
20.0MHZ/		10 DB/
5MHZ RBW (AUTO)	CALIBRATOR	

Changing Acquisition Mode

Item 4 on the Display Menu toggles between MAX/MIN and PEAK signal acquisition modes. To change acquisition modes, press [DSPL] [4]. Quickly toggle back and forth between MAX/MIN and PEAK several times.

The PEAK display is essentially the top of the MAX/MIN display. The 2711 inherently produces an analog spectrum. In the MAX/MIN acquisition mode, the maximum and minimum amplitudes of this spectrum are alternately sampled at 512 successive points. Plotting the two interleaved sets of 256 points each, produces the analog-like MAX/MIN spectrum that you see. In the PEAK acquisition mode, only the maximum amplitude is sampled and displayed at all 512 points. Which acquisition mode you choose is up to you, but the max/min mode has the advantage of bearing some semblance to the analog signal and readily revealing pulsed versus constant carrier signals — pulsed signals cause the signal peaks to be "filled in".

For now, leave the display in MAX/MIN mode.

175.0MHZ	(AUTO SWEEP)	ATTN 10DB
-20.0DBM		VF WIDE
20.0MHZ/		10 DB/
5MHZ RBW (AUTO)	CALIBRATOR	

Adding Titles and Labels

Suppose you want to permanently store a spectral display, either by photographing the screen or by plotting the display. It would be useful to title the display — and you can. If you are plotting the display, you can also label significant points.

Ensure that only the D register is active, and press [DSPL] [5]. Item 2 reads TITLE MODE EDIT if one or more registers contain a current sweep (as now) or TITLE MODE EDIT WFM x if only saved data are displayed (saving a waveform also saves its title).

In either case, the title to be edited is always associated with the highest priority displayed waveform (see *Register Priority* in section 5). This means, for instance, that to create a title for the B waveform, the C and D registers must be turned off. Or to edit the title of a saved waveform in the C register, all registers containing a current sweep must be turned off. Although you can edit the title of a saved waveform for display or plotting, only the originally saved waveform title is retained. You can circumvent this restriction by saving the waveform and its new title as part of a stored settings group (see *Saving and Recalling Settings and Displays* later in this section). The edited title is then retained as part of the newly saved settings/waveform, and you can delete the original if desired.

When performing a screen plot, the title being edited is attached to the highest priority waveform (even if it has a previously saved title). However, if titled, lower-priority, saved waveforms exist, their titles are correctly attached to them.

The title can be up to 31 characters on a single line, and you can only title one display at a time. When title mode is turned on, the left-hand readouts move down one row to accommodate the title, even if the title field is blank. This is also a convenient way to position the readouts lower on the screen if you wish. **Select Item 2 and press [W] to begin editing.** If the display is already titled, its title appears at the upper left with an underscore cursor beneath the first letter. If the display is untitled, just the cursor appears.

To edit a title, use the FREQ/MKRS knob to sequentially select characters. Alphanumeric characters appear above the cursor as the knob is turned. Move the cursor left or right with the [MKR ←] and [MKR →] keys. Delete the entire title by pressing [Y].

As an example, create a new title TEST123. Rotate the knob until the letter T appears. Move the cursor one place to the right by pressing [MKR →]. Rotate the knob until E appears. Continue this process until you have spelled TEST.

You can enter numbers and advance the cursor automatically without rotating the knob by using the numeric keypad. Press [1] [2] [3] to complete the title.

Now modify the title. When you are done, press [X] to store the result in the display title buffer. You may exit from the title edit mode without saving the new or modified title by pressing [Z].

To make the title visible on screen or on a plot, toggle item 1, TITLE MODE, of the Title Mode Menu to ON. Toggle item 1 again to turn off the title. Leave the title on, and return to the spectral display. Your title appears in the upper left corner of the screen.

At this point, the title is associated with the highest priority waveform. You will permanently attach it to waveform C. Save the title in waveform C by pressing [SAVE ENABLE] [C]. Now delete the title from the display title buffer by pressing [DSPL] [5] [2] [W] [Y], and then return to the spectral display. The title is gone, but the readouts are displaced downward one line because TITLE MODE is still enabled. Now turn off the D register and turn on C. The title returns and has become part of the saved waveform in C. The title will vanish from the screen if any register is turned on which contains a current sweep, but will remain in storage register C until waveform C is cleared ([SAVE ENABLE] [C]).

Now select Item 4, PLOT LABELING EDIT. Editing plot labels works the same as title editing except that the cursor can be moved vertically using any of the [↑] or [↓] arrow keys.

Press [W] to begin editing. Move the cursor one division to the right of center screen and two divisions down from the reference level. Enter the characters:

2ND HARMONIC

Then move the cursor to the peak at the left of the screen and label it:

FUNDAMENTAL

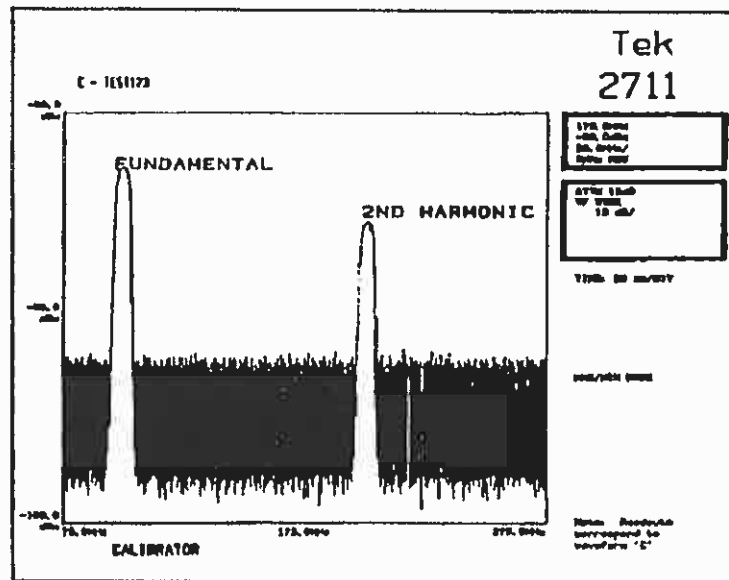


Figure 6-10. 2711 plot with title and plot labels.

The labels denote the calibrator signal and its second harmonic. Press [X] to store the label(s). Pressing [Z] exits from the procedure without any changes.

To make labels appear on your plot, select Item 3 from the **TITLE MODE** Menu. Item 3 is a toggle which turns the labels on and off. Press [DSPL] to return to the spectral display.

NOTE

Labels only appear on the hard copy device, not on screen.

See Figure 6-10 for an example of the plot with labels, and then turn off the title and plot labels.

Turning Graticule Illumination On and Off

Item 6 on the DSPL Menu is a simple toggle that turns the graticule illumination on and off. Press [DSPL] [6] several times to see the graticule illumination change state.

Displaying an External Source

Item 7, DISPLAY SOURCE, in the DSPL Menu enables you to substitute an external low pass signal for the normally displayed spectrum. The signal must be input to the instrument on pin 1 of the rear panel accessory connector J103, and must be in the range of 0 - 1.4 volts with a 3 dB bandwidth not greater than 50 kHz. DISPLAY STORAGE, VERT SCALE 10/5/1, SWEEP RATE, and some VID FLTR selections (10 Hz, 1 kHz, 10 kHz, 100 kHz) remain active, and can be used to process the external signal. Refer to the accessory connector discussion for additional details.

300.0MHZ	(AUTO SWEEP)	ATTN 10DB
-20.0DBM		VF WIDE
50.0MHZ/		10 DB/
5MHZ RBW (AUTO)	CALIBRATOR	

The Display Line and Limit Detector

The 2711 provides a convenient method to determine whether a signal peak is higher or lower than some particular level, or whether it falls within a specified range. The DISPLAY LINE feature displays a horizontal line at the level you specify. You can visually compare signal amplitudes to the line, or set the 2711 to alarm audibly if a signal crosses the line.

To see the DISPLAY LINE feature in action, press [DSPL] [8], and select Item 2, VALUE ENTRY. Enter -50 dBm by pressing [5] [0] [Z].

The 2711 reverts automatically to the spectral display which now contains a horizontal line three divisions down (-50 dBm). Notice the A register's red LED is lit. When the display line is on, you cannot display the contents of the A register. Data stored in A are not destroyed, but you cannot see them until you turn off the line.

There is another way to set the level of the line. Turn on the marker and set it at the peak of the calibration signal's third harmonic. Press [DSPL] [8] again and select Item 3, DISPLAY LINE TO MARKER. The spectral display reappears with a

horizontal line at the marker position. This provides a convenient way to identify all signals greater or less than another signal. If the marker is not turned on when item 3 is selected, you receive an error message.

Press [DSPL] [8] again and select Item 4, LIMIT DETECTOR. The end-of-line status indicator changes to OVER; the display line has been made an upper limit. If an on-screen signal goes over the limit, the audio alarm sounds.

Press [DSPL] to return to the spectral display. The alarm should be sounding. When the limit detector and the display line are both selected, the marker automatically turns on and moves to the highest signal peak on screen. This feature enables you to quickly read the amplitude of the largest signal after the alarm alerts you that the limit has been exceeded.

Enter a new value of -25 dBm for the display line; the alarm should stop because all signals are now below the limit. Press [DSPL] [8] and again select Item 4.

The status indicator changes to UNDER. The display line has now changed to a lower limit. The alarm will sound when all signals on screen are under the limit. **Press [DSPL] to return to the spectral display.** The alarm should be sounding.

Select the LIMIT DETECTOR once again. The status indicator changes to OVER-UNDER. The display line becomes an upper limit and the threshold set using [MKR/FREQ] [0] becomes a lower limit.

Press [DSPL] to return to the spectral display. The limits are indicated by the broken horizontal line. If signals are within the limits, no alarm sounds. The alarm will sound if all signals fall below the lower limit or if one signal exceeds the upper limit.

The limit detecting features are very useful for go/no-go or yes/no type tests. They are especially useful for doing vehicular leakage surveys of cable television facilities. Set the display line to the desired number of dB μ V/m, and when the alarm sounds, note the location and magnitude (using the marker readout) of the leak for later investigation and correction.

Further, the display line/limit detector feature converts the user-definable command "WAIT FOR END OF SWEEP" to a "WAIT FOR LIMIT" command (see **USER DEF** at the end of this section). This is a convenient way to halt the execution of a user-defined routine until the alarm condition has been satisfied.

If you change the reference level while using the display line/limit detector feature, the line changes position on screen to track the new reference level. Press [**↑**] next to [REF LEVEL] to observe this. However, the line can not be moved off screen. Press [**↑**] until the line reaches the top of the screen. You will receive the message

DISPLAY LINE OUT OF RANGE

Lower the line and the message will disappear.

Now turn off the limit detector by selecting LIMIT DETECTOR one more time, and turn off the line by toggling Item 1 from the DISPLAY LINE Menu.

400.0MHZ	(AUTO SWEEP)	ATTN 0DB
-40.0DBM		VF WIDE
20.0MHZ/		10 DB
5MHZ RBW (AUTO)	CALIBRATOR	

Activating Minimum Hold

Here is an easy way to determine the approximate upper and lower bounds on a spectrum by using the MIN HOLD and MAX HOLD features. While MAX HOLD is accessible by dedicated key, MIN HOLD can be accessed only from the Display Menu.

Call up the DSPL Menu and select Item 9. You will be offered a choice of storage registers for the result of the MIN HOLD process. Press [W] to simultaneously start the MIN HOLD process and select the A register for the result (pressing [X] or [Y] would select the B or C register, respectively, for the result).

This feature is similar to the MAX HOLD function. Minimum hold compares the amplitude of the current sweep with the stored minimum value of previous sweeps. If the current amplitude is less, the current value becomes the new stored minimum.

Now press [MAX HOLD] [B] to accumulate the maximum spectrum amplitude in register B. With the A, B, and D registers displayed, you have an upper and lower bound on the real-time signal in D. As time passes, you will notice that the upper and lower bounds no longer change, because the probability of new random spectral peaks exceeding those already observed becomes very small.

Turn off the minimum hold feature by selecting item 9 again; selecting MIN HOLD when it is already on toggles the feature off. Clear and turn off the A and B registers and the MAXIMUM HOLD feature.

100.0MHZ	(AUTO SWEEP)	ATTN 10DB
-30.0DBM		VF 30KHZ
100.0KHZ/		10 DB/
30KHZ RBW (AUTO)	CALIBRATOR	

APPL



The Applications (APPL) Menu automates some routine, but often time-consuming, spectral measurements. It enables you to quickly determine:

- Signal bandwidths
- Normalized noise amplitudes
- Carrier-to-noise ratios
- Occupied bandwidth
- FM deviation
- And search for signals in a specified frequency range

Most of the items on this menu are toggles which turn the indicated measurement mode on and off. However, you can specify certain measurement parameters using item 9, SETUP TABLE. Because

several of the measurement modes make use of the markers, you can also exit from those modes by turning off the markers.

One of the items (SIGNAL SEARCH) enables the 2711 to automatically detect and catalog any signals within a specified frequency range and above a threshold which you designate. The signal amplitudes and frequencies are measured, and the results can be displayed on screen or sent to a printer.

Measuring Signal Bandwidths

The 2711 measures signal bandwidth by detecting the signal peak, and then finding the frequency points on the signal spectrum which are a designated number of dB down from the peak. You specify the number of dB using the APPL Menu Setup Table. The difference between the frequency points is the bandwidth. Optimum resolution is obtained by spreading the signal across as large a portion of the screen as possible (resolution is essentially plus or minus one screen location or 1/512 of the total span in PEAK acquisition mode).

To see how to measure signal bandwidths, first change the resolution BW to 300 kHz. This provides a wide trace that is equal to the width of the resolution bandwidth filter.

Press [APPL]. Item 0 Indicates BANDWIDTH MODE @ -3 DBC. This means that by selecting this item, the 2711 will measure the bandwidth of a displayed signal at points 3 dB down from its peak amplitude.

Suppose you wish to measure the bandwidth at another point. **To change the number of dBs down from the peak at which the bandwidth is measured, select Item 9, SETUP TABLE, from the APPL Menu. Choose Item 0 from the Setup Table and, following the prompt, enter a value of -6 dB by pressing [6] [Z].**

To implement BANDWIDTH MODE, press the backspace key to return to the Application Menu. Then select Item 0.

The 2711 returns automatically to the spectral display after you press [0]. The delta markers have been activated and bracket the calibration signal peak. If the signal peak is not centered, the 2711 selects the peak nearest center screen.

The first two items in the right on-screen column read:

**BW 300KHZ
@ -6DBC**

You are measuring the bandwidth of the resolution bandwidth filter. The indicated bandwidth may not measure exactly 300 kHz; it will vary slightly.

Change the span to 10 kHz/division and the resolution bandwidth to 30 KHZ. The bandwidth should now read roughly 30 kHz.

The 2711 remains in bandwidth mode until you call up the APPL Menu and turn it off, make an alternate selection, or the markers are turned off. Press [APPL] [0] to turn off BANDWIDTH mode.

100.0MHZ	(AUTO SWEEP)	ATTN 10DB
-30.0DBM		VF WIDE
20.0MHZ/		10 DB/
5MHZ RBW (AUTO)		

Measuring Average Noise

Item 2 of the APPL Menu causes the 2711 to measure the average noise at the marker location and normalize it to a specified bandwidth. The default bandwidth is 1 Hz, but you can change it to suit your application. If you are in the CATV business (in the USA), you will probably use 4 MHz. For now, you will change it to 5 MHz to obtain an approximation of the instrument's noise floor.

Press [APPL] and then select Item 9 from the Applications Menu. Choose Item 2, NOISE NORM'D BW, from the Setup Table. Enter a value of 5 MHz and return to the APPL Menu by pressing [BKSP]. Choose Item 2, NOISE NORM'D.

The spectral display reappears and the marker is turned on. The first two items in the right on-screen column read:

**N-93.0DBM
@ 5.0MHZ**

Your reading may vary slightly. The reading is the instrument's average internal noise in a 5 MHz bandwidth at the marker frequency. You will also receive the warning:

NOISE LEVEL LESS THAN 2DB

This is because the instrument recognizes when the noise it is measuring approaches its own noise floor. It knows that external signals too close to the internal noise value cannot be measured accurately.

Ensure that your instrument is in MAX/MIN display mode, and using the FREQ/MKRS knob, position the marker at the bottom of the displayed noise. Notice that the noise amplitude readout does not change significantly.

The noise amplitude appears to be about — but not exactly — half way between the max and min values of the spectral display. The 2711 does not compute the arithmetic mean of the min and max values using decibels (that yields an incorrect answer). Rather, the 2711 measures the average noise amplitude between sweeps. The display does not change, but you may notice a pause while the instrument carries out the noise measuring algorithm. First, the instrument measures the average noise power in ZERO SPAN using a narrow bandwidth video filter (**see a better approximation of the average noise by pressing [VID FLTR]**). It then corrects the measured value for the difference between average and RMS amplitudes. More corrections are added for the effects of log amplification, and to account for the equivalent noise bandwidth of the resolution bandwidth filter, which does not measure precisely 5 MHz. The resulting noise is then normalized to the specified bandwidth.

Turn off the markers and the video filter.

Measuring Carrier-To-Noise Ratios

To demonstrate the carrier-to-noise (C/N) ratio feature of the 2711 you will measure the calibrator-to-instrument-noise-floor ratio in a 5 MHz bandwidth. In actual applications, you are more likely to measure a carrier peak-to-system noise ratio, but the technique is the same.

Turn on the calibrator. Then call up the Application Menu, and select the Setup Table. Choose Item 1, NORM BW FOR C/N, and again enter 5 MHz for the noise bandwidth for the carrier-to-noise (C/N) measurement. Return to the Application Menu and select Item 1 to turn on the C/N feature.

The spectral display appears with the fixed marker on the 100 MHz signal peak (the 2711 places the fixed marker on the signal peak nearest the center of the screen in C/N mode). The moveable marker appears 1 division from the left screen edge.

Reposition the moveable marker 50 MHz above the signal.

NOTE

The moveable marker is initially positioned only to clearly separate it from the fixed marker. You must place the noise marker at the frequency where you want the noise measured.

The first two items in the right on-screen column read:

**C/N 63.0DB
@ 5.0MHZ**

Your instrument's reading may vary slightly. You will also receive the "NOISE LEVEL LESS THAN 2DB" warning that was discussed in the previous section.

The C/N reading is the ratio of the signal power at the fixed marker's position to the average noise power at the movable marker position. The noise reading is corrected as indicated in the

normalized noise measurement section. Since the noise level you measured earlier was about -93 dBm and the signal peak is -30 dBm, the ratio should be approximately 63 dB.

The preamplifier discussed in the INPUT Menu section of this chapter can be very important when making noise or C/N measurements in broad-band networks. For instance, in the U.S., good cable television operating practice requires that the video signal be at least 0 dBmV while picture quality requires the noise to be about 45 dB lower, or about -45 dBmV in a 4 MHz band. **Change the reference units to DBMV and reset the noise bandwidth to 4 MHz. Select NOISE NORM'D and notice the measured noise is about -42 dBmV.** If we were to connect the 2711 to a cable television tap with a 0 dBmV video signal and a 45 dB C/N, you would be unable to measure the noise or C/N because the cable noise (-45 dBmV in this example) is below the normal instrument noise floor.

Using the INPUT Menu, turn off the calibrator, turn on the preamplifier, and set the RF attenuation to zero. Notice the instrument noise floor has been reduced by over 12 dB to about -55 dBmV, making it possible to measure both noise and C/N on our hypothetical cable.

Turn off the preamp and noise measurement mode.

Reset the Instrument to the factory default power-up settings.

NOTE

If the 2711 is in PEAK acquisition mode, it reverts to MAX/MIN mode whenever the normalized noise or carrier-to-noise features are activated. You can return it to PEAK mode by pressing [DSPL] [4].

900.0MHZ	(AUTO SWEEP)	ATTN 50DB
20.0DBM		VF WIDE
180MHZ/MAX		10 DB/
5MHZ RBW(AUTO)		

Searching For Signals

The 2711 provides a signal search feature that enables you to detect signal peaks over a wide frequency range while still using a narrow span and/or resolution bandwidth. The instrument sequentially implements a series of searches using the marker peak find capability, and the span and resolution bandwidth that you specify using the SIGNAL SEARCH Menu. Each search range is equal to 10 times the specified span/div, but each search range except the first overlaps the previous range by one division. The first search starts at the beginning frequency and the last stops at, or overlaps, the end frequency as indicated in Figure 6-11. Although the last search range may overlap the end frequency, no signals are reported above the end frequency. A verification process looks at the entire range twice and reports only those signals which are present both times.

To see how SIGNAL SEARCH works, turn on the calibrator and set the following Instrument controls:

SPAN/DIV	5.0MHZ
RESOLUTION BW	300.0KHZ
REFERENCE LEVEL	-20.0DBM
VIDEO FILTER	300.0KHZ

You will search the frequency range from 55 to 550 MHz. Press [APPL], and select Item 3, SIGNAL SEARCH MENU. Choose Item 0, BEGIN FREQ, and enter 55 MHz. Then choose Item 1, END FREQ, and enter 550 MHz. The frequency and amplitude of all signals within the specified frequency range that are below the reference level but above the threshold are stored. The threshold is normally set by the 2711 at about one division above the lowest signal peaks (usually noise), but you can reset it manually if desired via [MKR/FREQ] [0]. See *Setting the Signal Threshold* in this section for details.

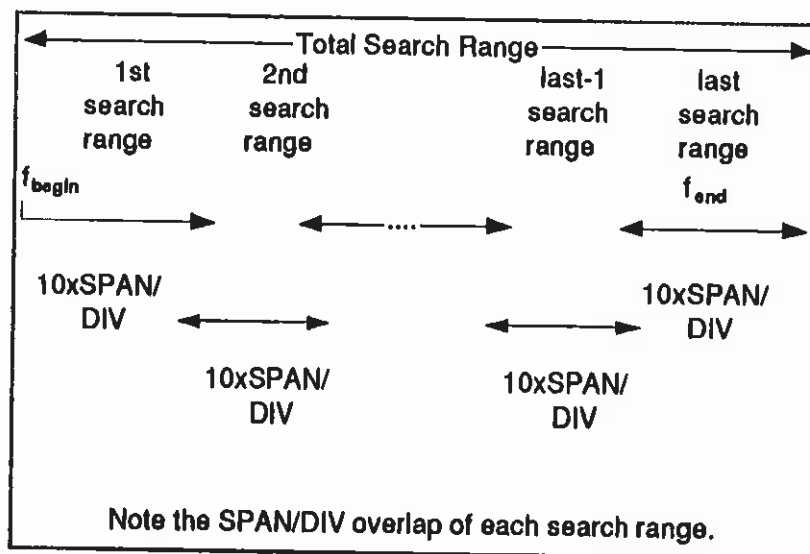


Figure 6-11. The SIGNAL SEARCH frequency range.

Start the search by selecting Item 2, **START TEST**. You will see the measurement parameters change, and the message:

SIGNAL SEARCH IN PROCESS

is displayed while the search is occurring. You will also notice the center frequency change as each search range is completed. When the search is complete, the message disappears and the instrument is reset to its original measurement parameters.

Press [UTIL] [4] [2], and then press [0] until the status indicator reads CRT (this feature is explained in the UTIL discussion later in this section). Press [UTIL] again, and then select the **SIGNAL SEARCH MENU** from the APPL Menu. Notice that the number of signals detected is displayed at the end of Item 3, **DISPLAY RESULTS**. Select Item 3.

The **SIGNAL SEARCH RESULTS** table appears. Five signals are listed (the calibration signal fundamental and its first four harmonics). The amplitude and frequency of each are indicated.

Return to the spectral display by pressing [APPL].

100.0MHZ	(AUTO SWEEP)	ATTN 10DB
-20.0DBM		VF 300KHZ
1.0MHZ/		10 DB/
300KHZ RBW (AUTO)		

Measuring Occupied Bandwidths (OBW)

Measuring occupied bandwidths is similar to measuring signal bandwidths, except that the 2711 determines the bandwidth that contains $n\%$ of the signal's energy rather than the bandwidth enclosed by the x dB down points.

To determine the occupied bandwidth, the 2711 first sums the signal power in all 512 frequency points along the displayed spectrum, ignoring any contributions more than 40 dB below the signal peak. This is the total displayed signal power, P_t . It then sums the power in the frequency points starting at the left-hand edge of the screen until the accumulated power equals or exceeds:

$$P_t \times \frac{1}{2} \left(1 - \frac{n}{100}\right)$$

P_t = total signal power

n = percentage of signal power within the occupied BW

It then performs a similar calculation starting at the right-hand screen edge. That is, it finds the frequency points, both above and below the signal, beyond which half the power outside the occupied BW resides. The frequency difference between the upper and lower points is the $n\%$ occupied bandwidth.

For instance, if you specify the 90% occupied bandwidth, the 2711 first computes the total signal power, and then sums the signal power in the points starting at the left-hand edge until it accumulates 5% of the total (the percent signal power outside the occupied BW is $(100\% - 90\%) = 10\%$, and half of it is below, and half above, the occupied BW). See Figure 6-12.

If the accumulated power does not precisely equal half the power outside the occupied BW (the usual case), the 2711 linearly interpolates between frequency points to arrive at better frequency estimates.

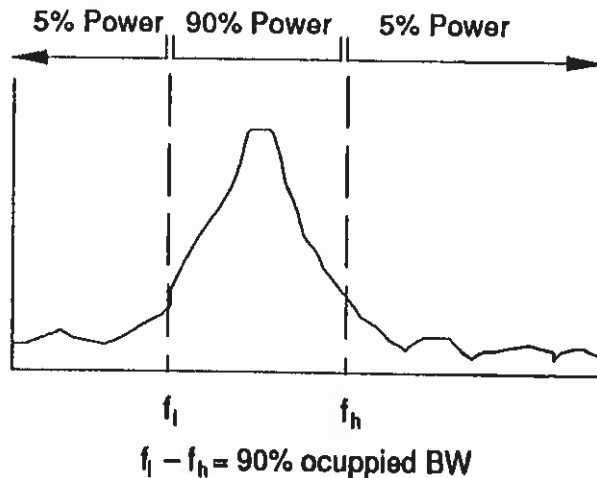


Figure 6-12. Illustration of Occupied BW measurement.

Remember that the OCCUPIED BW mode always works on the digitally sampled signal. Therefore, different results can be obtained in PEAK and MAX/MIN modes unless video filtering is used to minimize post-detection noise.

You can demonstrate OCCUPIED BW mode with the calibration signal, but it is more interesting to use a broadcast signal.

Ensure the calibrator is turned off and connect a short antenna or CATV tap to the instrument input as outlined in Appendix A. Adjust the reference level until you can see individual FM broadcast or TV sound carrier signal peaks and then tune the instrument until a strong signal is centered. Your display might resemble Figure 6-13.

Press [BKSP] to return to the APPL Menu, and choose Item 4, OCCUPIED BW. The spectral display reappears with both markers active. Set the span to 50 kHz/div, and center the signal if necessary.

The right-hand data column will display a reading similar to this

OBW 57.36KHZ
@ 90%

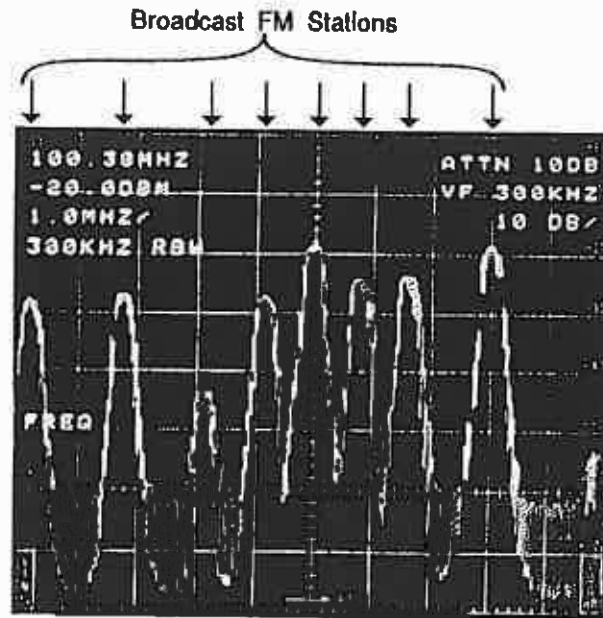


Figure 6-13. Portion of U.S. broadcast FM band.

Because the signal varies considerably from sweep to sweep, the markers jump around the screen and you will not get a consistent OCCUPIED BW reading.

Activate MAX HOLD in register B and turn off register D.

Remember, the markers are present only on the highest priority waveform. In a short time a broad spectral peak develops, and the OCCUPIED BW reading begins to settle to a constant value.

Figure 6-14 shows a typical MAX HOLD waveform from an FM stereo broadcast. The relatively sharp skirts near ± 70 kHz denote the upper and lower limits of frequency deviation.

To obtain best frequency accuracy when making OCCUPIED BW measurements, as with signal bandwidth measurements, use small spans/division (spread the signal over as much of the screen as possible) subject to the following limitations:

- The signal spectrum at the edges of the screen should be down at least 40 dB from its peak.
- The signal peak should be at least 40 dB greater than the displayed noise.

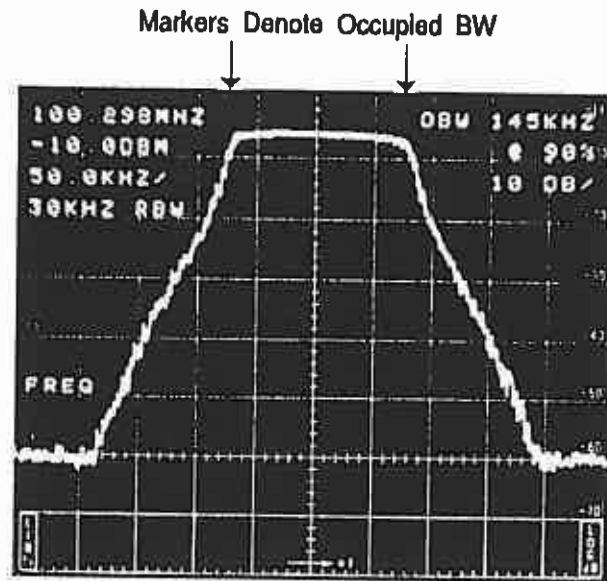


Figure 6-14. OCCUPIED BW mode with MAX HOLD.

- The resolution bandwidth filter must be 1/5 or less of the OCCUPIED BW. A resolution bandwidth filter that is too wide will artificially broaden the OCCUPIED BW.
- Only vertical scales of 5 or 10 dB/div can be used.
- There should be no signal on screen except the desired signal. Other signals, including the zero Hertz spur, will contribute some inaccuracy.

For optimum amplitude accuracy, keep the signal peak near the reference level.

Experiment If you wish, and then turn off OCCUPIED BW mode, MAX HOLD A & B, and register B. OCCUPIED BW mode can be turned off by again pressing ([APPL] [4]), or by turning off all display registers.

Turn register D back on.

100.0MHZ	(AUTO SWEEP)	ATTN 10DB
-20.0DBM		VF 300KHZ
1.0MHZ/		10 DB/
300KHZ RBW (AUTO)		

Viewing Instantaneous Frequency Deviation

Normally, the display on the 2711 represents the input signal after it has been AM-detected. The result is a spectral display of signal power vs. frequency. However, by selecting FM DEVIATION MODE, you can view instantaneous frequency variations vs. time.

You need a frequency modulated signal to demonstrate this mode. Ensure the calibrator is turned off, and connect a short antenna or CATV tap to the instrument input as outlined in *Appendix A*. Adjust the reference level until you can see individual FM broadcast or TV sound carrier signal peaks and then tune the instrument until a strong signal is centered. Your display might resemble Figure 6-13 from the *Measuring Occupied Bandwidths* discussion.

Change the span to 100 kHz/div. Press [APPL] and select Item 7, FM DEVIATION, from the APPL Menu.

The 2711 reverts to a waveform display mode in zero span. The bottom line of the right column reads:

FM 10 KHZ/

indicating that FM demodulation is now being used, and that the vertical scale factor has changed to 10 kHz/division — the vertical axis now measures frequency deviation.

The sweep being displayed should resemble the upper trace in Figure 6-15. It is an approximate indication of the instantaneous frequency deviation.

The vertical scale can be changed in a 10-5-1 kHz/ division sequence. Cycle through the frequency deviation scales by repeatedly pressing [10/5/1].

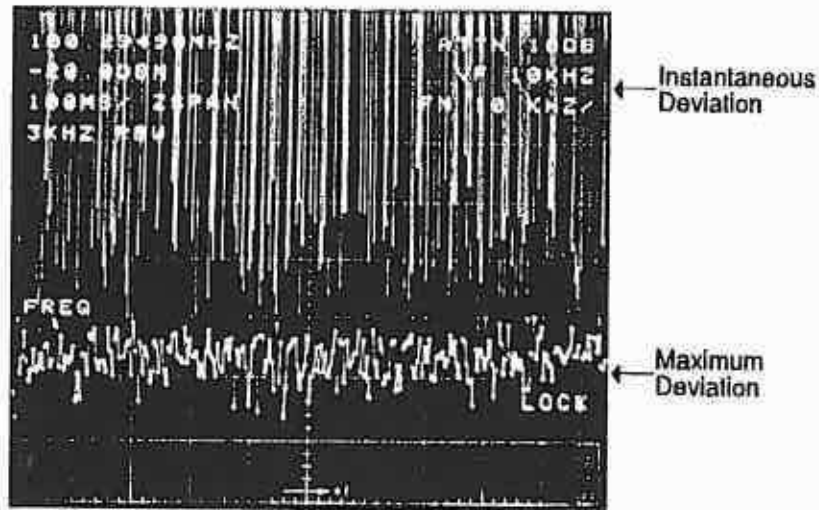


Figure 6-15. Instantaneous frequency deviation and maximum observed deviation.

To check the maximum deviation, set the vertical scale to 10 kHz/division, and using the DSPL Menu, select MIN HOLD IN WFM A. Let the data accumulate for 2-3 minutes. A ragged horizontal waveform develops indicating the maximum frequency excursions during the observation period.

To display the frequency deviation with the marker, turn the marker on and leave only the A register active. Move the marker to the point where you want the measurement.

NOTE

Because of the FM demodulator bandwidth, the modulating signal used in deviation mode should consist of normal program material or a single tone in the audio frequency range.

The foregoing technique provides a rough indication of unidirectional frequency deviation. The carrier frequency is at the reference level, and a downward excursion represents a deviation below the carrier. If the FM spectrum is symmetrical, the peak to peak deviation is twice the unidirectional amount. In the example

of Figure 6-15, seven divisions equals 70 kHz (at 10 kHz/div, and the peak to peak deviation is approximately 140 kHz.

To see the deviation in both directions, try the MAX HOLD technique outlined in **Measuring Occupied Bandwidths**. For extremely accurate deviation measurements, the Bessel Null approach should be used. See **Spectrum Analyzer Fundamentals**, Tektronix application note 26W-7037-1.

100.0MHZ	(AUTO SWEEP)	ATTN 50DB
-20.0DBM		VF 300KHZ
1.0MHZ/		10 DB/
300KHZ RBW (AUTO)		

DEMOM

/TG



The Demodulator/Tracking Generator (DEMOM/TG) Menu provides means of listening to AM or FM modulation on the signals being analyzed, activating Video Monitor mode (Option 10), and controlling the built-in Tracking Generator (Option 04).

Listening to FM Transmissions

Listening to signals often helps to identify the source. A built-in speaker is provided, but if higher fidelity is needed, or you are using the 2711 in a noisy location, headphones can be used. A 1/8" miniature phone jack is located near the front of the right side of the instrument. Stereo decoding is not supported.

To experiment with the FM demodulator, connect an antenna or cable to the 2711 as outlined in Appendix A. Change the signal height and center frequency until you see signal peaks in the 88 to 108 MHz FM broadcast band (If you do not have broadcast FM in your area, you can tune to a TV stations' audio carrier). Set the center frequency to coincide with one of the peaks and press:

[DEMOM/TG]

The DEMOD/TG Menu appears. **Select Item 2, FM DEMODULATOR.** The LED adjacent to FM VOL on the front panel lights, the spectral display reappears, and you may hear the instrument sweeping. **If you hear nothing, turn the outer barrel of the LEVEL control.** Turning clockwise increases the volume. **Press [ZERO SPAN] to hear what is being transmitted by the station.** Leave the instrument in zero span, and tune it as you would a radio receiver, using the **FREQ/MKRS** knob. The signal level rises as you tune-in stations and falls to the noise floor when no station is present.

When finished, turn off the FM demodulator by selecting Item 0, OFF, from the DEMOD/TG Menu and press [ZERO SPAN] to return to the normal spectral display.

Listening to AM Transmissions

To listen to AM transmissions, connect an antenna to the 2711 as outlined in Appendix A. The antenna will probably need to be much longer than for FM. **Set the center frequency to 1 MHz, span to 10 kHz/division, sweep and resolution bandwidth to AUTO, and calibrator off.** Increase the signal height until you can see signal peaks in the 500 kHz - 1.6 MHz area (this is the medium-wave broadcast band). Change the center frequency until one of the peaks is centered. **Press [DEMOD/TG], and select Item 1, AM DEMODULATOR.** The LED adjacent to AM VOL on the front panel lights, and the spectral display reappears. **Press [ZERO SPAN] and adjust the LEVEL control as needed.** You will hear what is being transmitted by the station.

Leave the instrument in zero span, and use the FREQ/MKRS knob to tune other stations. When finished, turn off the AM demodulator by selecting item 0, OFF from the DEMOD/TG Menu.

Listening to FM or AM Transmissions

To hear AM and FM stations, select AM DEMODULATOR and FM DEMODULATOR simultaneously (both AM VOL and FM VOL LEDs will light). This approach is convenient if you do not know whether the signal is AM or FM, or for simply finding audio modulated signals and then switching on only the AM or FM demodulator to determine which type of modulation is being used.

100.0MHZ	(AUTO SWEEP)	ATTN 10DB
-20.0DBM		VF 300KHZ
1.0MHZ/		10 DB/
300KHZ RBW (AUTO)		

Video Demodulation (Option 10 Only)

The video demodulator (Option 10) enables you to view broadcast or satellite video transmissions. This is useful for identifying signals, and determining the nature of interference.

Call up the DEMOD/TG Menu. Item 3 is an on/off toggle which may indicate BROADCAST (AM) VIDEO or SATELLITE (FM) VIDEO, depending upon the mode that was last selected. The BROADCAST mode is used for off-air or cable TV signals; SATELLITE is used, for example, when viewing FM video signals at the output of a block down converter (LNB). In the following example we will use the AM monitor mode to view an off-air or cable TV signal, but remember that SATELLITE can be very useful when identifying transponder signals. First, some cautions:

- The carrier-to-noise ratio (C/N) must be sufficiently large - at least 30 dB in a 4 MHz bandwidth in BROADCAST mode (10 dB in a 30 MHz bandwidth in SATELLITE mode), but it is possible to get a poor quality display at slightly lower C/N ratios.
- You will not be able to satisfactorily monitor "scrambled" or sync-less signals in either mode.
- The video carrier in either mode should be placed at the reference level for satisfactory operation.
- Energy dispersal dithering is generally not a problem in SATELLITE mode.

To continue with the example, select Item 9, VIDEO SETUP TABLE, from the DEMOD/TG Menu. Toggle Item 0 of the Setup Table to BROADCAST mode. Then toggle Items 1 and 2 to the proper polarities. If you don't know the polarity, set SYNC POLARITY to POSITIVE and VIDEO POLARITY to NEGATIVE. These are the standards for normal U.S. broadcast television. You can change them later to accommodate other standards if the video is inverted or sync cannot be achieved.



Figure 6-16. 2711 screen in video monitor mode.

Return to the spectral display. Connect an antenna or cable drop to the instrument as outlined in Appendix A and tune to a strong video carrier (choose an unscrambled channel). Adjust the reference level until the signal peak is at the top line. The signal level is very important for proper performance¹, and must also be well above the noise floor.

Call up the Demod/TG Menu and choose Item 3, BROADCAST (AM) VIDEO. A TV picture appears almost immediately. When item 3 is activated, the 2711 presets a number of measurement parameters in order to generate a TV picture. You may be able to obtain a slightly better picture by changing some settings. Vary the reference level (use the 1 dB step size) and experiment with the INTENSITY control to obtain optimum contrast. Use the inner knob of the LEVEL control to change vertical size and obtain a flicker-free display. Use the SWEEP arrow keys to change horizontal size.

Figure 6-16 shows a typical 2711 monitor mode display with an adequate C/N ratio. The ability to view a TV picture is useful not only for station identification, but also to observe interfering signals and modulation problems.

¹ This can be conveniently done by placing the marker atop the video carrier and selecting Item 3, MARKER TO REFERENCE LEVEL, from the MKR/FREQ Menu.

Turn off the video monitor by toggling Item 3 of the DEMOD/TG Menu to OFF. When the monitor is disabled, the settings used prior to entering monitor mode are restored; any changes made while using the video monitor are forgotten.

Reinitialize your instrument (press [UTIL] [1] [1]).

900.0MHZ	(AUTO SWEEP)	ATTN 50DB
20.0DBM		VF WIDE
180MHZ/MAX		10 DB/
5MHZ RBW (AUTO)		

Using the Tracking Generator (Option 04 Only)

A Tracking Generator (TG) is a powerful tool for measuring the frequency response of a variety of active and passive devices. For examples, see *Spectrum Analyzer Fundamentals*, Tektronix publication 26W-7037-1.

The 2711's built-in tracking generator (Option 04) is an RF sine wave signal source whose output frequency follows, or tracks, the frequency currently being analyzed by the 2711. For example, if the 2711 is currently sweeping from 55 MHz to 300 MHz, the output frequency of the TG also sweeps from 55 MHz to 300 MHz in synchronism with the instrument. However, it is possible to offset the TG slightly (typically -5 kHz to +60 kHz) with respect to the 2711 frequency to account for circuit drift or signal delays in propagating through the device under test.

The TG amplitude can be varied in 0.1 dB steps from -48 dBm to 0 dBm (or the equivalent in the other reference level units). It is also possible to vary the TG output amplitude over a range of about ± 2 dB relative to its designated amplitude using the front-panel LEVEL control.

The tracking generator is a powerful tool for all types of swept frequency measurements. You can determine the frequency response of filters, crystals, amplifiers, cables, modulators, and most other 2-port devices. Because the tracking generator is built into the 2711, no other instrumentation is required in many cases.

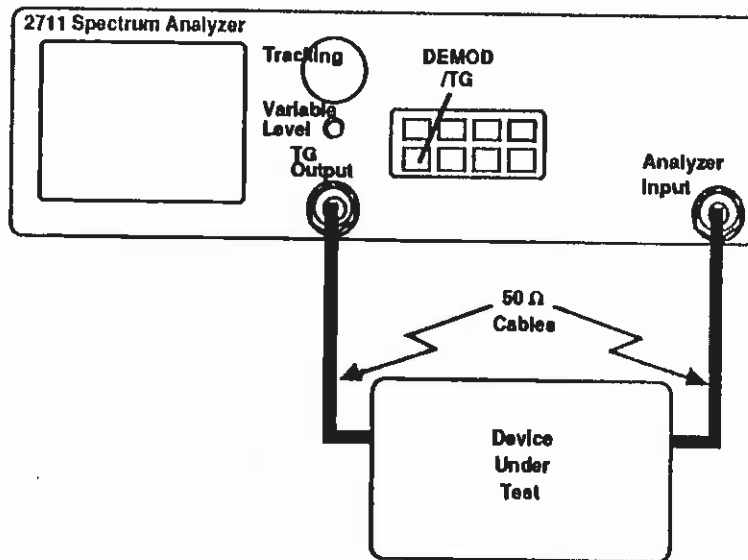


Figure 6-17. Equipment setup for tracking generator measurement of 50 Ω devices.

Figure 6-17 shows how simple the setup can be. However, if you are testing a broad-band device that does not have a 50 Ω input and output, it may be necessary to insert matching networks between the TG output/ device input and the device output/2711 input. Provision is made in both the INPUT Menu and the DEMOD/TG Menu to account for attenuation (or amplification) of external networks.

The status of all TG parameters and controls is stored when power to the 2711 is turned off. The condition of the TG will be the same after the power to the 2711 is turned back on that is was before power was turned off. The status of the parameters is also retained when the TG is turned off from the DEMOD/TG Menu. **To ensure that you begin this discussion with known settings, press:**

[UTL] [1] [1]

This recalls the factory default power-up settings, turns off the TG, and sets its parameters to their default values.

Turning the Tracking Generator On and Off

Call up the DEMOD/TG Menu by pressing:

[DEMOD/TG]

Item 4, TRACKING GENERATOR, is a toggle that turns the TG on and off. Its current status is indicated at the end of the line. **Press [4] to toggle the TG to ON.** The LED above the TG output lights indicating the TG is active and the screen reverts to the spectral display. At the lower left of the screen the TG output amplitude is displayed (the default is -48.0 dBm) in the current reference level units. **Press [DEMOD/TG] and toggle Item 4 again to turn the TG to OFF.**

Normalizing the Tracking Generator

The TG is normalized by determining the VCO voltage needed to center its output signal in the 3 kHz resolution bandwidth filter at 100 MHz. Its output amplitude at 100 MHz is then measured by the 2711 and properly adjusted as it is stepped through its entire range.

To ensure maximum accuracy when making TG measurements, the TG must first be normalized. Because TG normalizations depend on the 2711 reference, the instrument normalizations must be valid to achieve optimum results. See *Normalizing The 2711* and *Service Normalizations* in this section.

To normalize the TG, ensure the instrument is in spectral display mode and press:

[UTIL] [3]

Then select Item 3, TRACKING GENERATOR ONLY, from the NORMALIZATIONS Menu.

NOTE

The ALL PARAMETERS selection from the NORMALIZATION Menu refers only to 2711 parameters, not the tracking generator.

Following the on-screen prompt, connect a cable between the TG output and the 2711 Input, and press [W]. Usually, in about two minutes, a NORMALIZATION COMPLETE message will appear on screen. If you receive a NORMALIZATION FAILED message, repeat the normalization. If it cannot be completed satisfactorily, contact your Tektronix representative.

If any of the 2711's reference normalizations are missing or faulty, you will receive this message:

**** ONE OR MORE REFERENCE NORMALIZATIONS HAS NOT BEEN PERFORMED.**

**** FOR OPTIMUM ACCURACY, REFERENCE NORMALIZATIONS MUST BE DONE**

**** CONSULT MANUAL FOR PROCEDURE**

**PRESS "W" TO CONTINUE
PRESS "Z" TO ABORT**

If you have facilities to carry out the reference normalizations (see *Service Normalizations* in this section), abort this process and perform the reference normalizations before continuing. Otherwise, press [W] to continue. A recently normalized instrument is more accurate than one that has not been normalized, even if the references are not been normalized.

TG normalization is not continuously monitored by the 2711. To avoid inaccuracies due to temperature differentials, long-term drift, or other causes, we recommend that you periodically normalize the TG during long measurement sessions, or readjust the tracking to keep narrow resolution bandwidth filters properly aligned.

In some 2711s, the peak of the 5 MHz resolution bandwidth filter does not occur precisely at the center of its bandpass. This can result in small amplitude differences when switching from the 5 MHz filter to narrower filters. Relative responses using the 5 MHz filter are not affected. To determine the amount of error (if any), make a TG measurement using first the 5 MHz filter and then the 300 kHz filter (the 300 kHz filter is symmetric about its peak response). Note the difference and correct any absolute power measurements that you make with the 5 MHz filter by that amount.

Setting the Tracking Generator Amplitude

In many cases, you will wish to increase the -48 dBm TG output level. For instance, when using the 5 MHz resolution bandwidth filter, a -48 dBm signal is hidden in the instrument noise floor.

To reset the output amplitude, call up the DEMOD/TG Menu and select item 5, TG FIXED LEVEL. Following the on-screen prompts, enter a new value of -10.0 dBm, and then press [DEMOD/TG] to return to the spectral display. Notice that the new amplitude value is now shown at the lower left of the screen.

Ensure a cable is connected from the TG output to the 2711 input. Activate the video filter and reset the reference level to $+10$ dBm.

The combined TG/2711 frequency response across the 2711's entire input frequency range is displayed. You may find that the flatness of the response varies slightly as you change the TG output level. This is normal and within specification. However, any variation in flatness can be removed like this:

- Establish the test parameters including center frequency, span, resolution bandwidth, reference level, and TG output.
- Connect the TG output to the 2711 input, and save the resulting sweep in the A register.
- Insert the device to be tested.
- Conduct all measurements in the B,C MINUS A mode. This approach subtracts out the variations in combined TG/2711 response leaving only the response of the device.

Turn on the A register, and then save the display by pressing [A] [SAVE ENABLE] [A]. Call up the DEMOD/TG Menu again, and this time select item 6, TG VARIABLE LEVEL. This is an ON/OFF toggle that enables you to vary the TG output amplitude from -2 dB to plus several dB relative to the fixed amplitude specified by item 5.

Return to the spectral display by pressing [DEMOD/TG]. Notice the indicated TG output level is now followed by an asterisk (*). This indicates that TG variable level is enabled.

Rotate the LEVEL control (outer knob) all the way counter-clockwise. The D-register sweep should drop approximately 2 dB below the sweep saved in register A. Rotate the LEVEL control fully clockwise. The D sweep should rise several dB above the A sweep. Note that the indicated TG output amplitude has not changed; the TG output level is not calibrated when TG VARIABLE LEVEL is ON.

When the variable level control is set above the fixed level, it is possible to slightly compress the TG output signal, which may cause some degradation of the second harmonic specification. This is normally not a problem with passive linear devices, but can result in some intermodulation products with non-linear components, and spurious radiation from active devices such as modulators or transmitters. To avoid these problems, we suggest that you use the TG fixed level and instrument reference level controls to move signals vertically on the screen, rather than using the variable level feature.

Now clear the A register and toggle the TG VARIABLE LEVEL to OFF.

Adjusting the Tracking

The TG tracking is the amount by which the TG output frequency is offset from the frequency currently being analyzed by the 2711. The tracking can typically be adjusted from -5 kHz to +60 kHz. For most measurements, the tracking is not turned on (tracking = 0 Hz). However, when making measurements with a very narrow resolution bandwidth filter (3 kHz filter), or when the device under test creates a significant delay between its input and output ports (a long cable), it is necessary to adjust the tracking to ensure the TG signal is centered in the instrument resolution bandwidth filter.

To see how the tracking adjustment works, first set the center frequency and span as follows:

Center Frequency	100 MHz
Span	10 KHZ/div

The 3 kHz resolution bandwidth is automatically selected, and the display is a single horizontal line at about -10 dBm.

Save the display in register A. Turn on TG tracking by pressing:

[DEMOD/TG] [7]

and return to the spectral display. It is unchanged except for the message TRKG 0HZ at the lower right of the screen.

Turn the FREQ/MKRS knob several clicks in either direction. The indicated tracking should change by about 30 Hz per click, but nothing else happens. **Continue turning the knob until the D-register sweep decreases 6 dB relative to the A sweep.** **Now turn the knob in the opposite direction until the D sweep again decreases 6 dB.** The indicated tracking should change polarity. What you have done is to offset the TG output to the 6 dB down points of the 3 kHz resolution bandwidth filter.

Whenever you make measurements with the 3 kHz filter, always peak the response with the tracking control to ensure you are measuring the maximum signal. Further, whenever you use the 3 kHz filter to test a device that imposes a significant group delay on the received signal (such as a long cable), vary the tracking to ensure the instrument is correctly peaked. Because the TG signal is delayed, it lags behind the 2711 frequency by an amount that depends on the sweep rate and the group delay.

Unsave (clear) the A register and select the 3 kHz filter.

Using External Amplification/Attenuation With the TG

It is possible to insert another device such as an impedance matching network, attenuator, or amplifier between the TG output and the device under test. You can account for the gain or attenuation (and impedance change) introduced by the device. The altered output level appears on screen. This feature is a valuable aid whether recording data photographically, with a printer/plotter, or via the GPIB.

For instance, you may want to drive the device under test with a +10 dBm signal. You can do this by setting the TG output to -10 dBm and inserting a +20 dB amplifier between the TG and the device under test. In another case, you may wish to drive the TG at full output (0 dBm) but insert an external impedance matching pad to produce a better SWR.

To account for external amplification or attenuation press:

[DEMOD/TG] [8] [1]

and enter the appropriate value following the on-screen prompts. The TG EXT ATTEN/AMPL shows the value entered and TG FIXED LEVEL changes to include the offset. Note that entering a non-zero value automatically turns on the amplitude offset feature, while a value of zero automatically turns it off. You can also toggle the offset on and off using **[DEMOD/TG] [8] [0]**. Return to the spectral display. The on-screen TG output level has changed to show the offset value and is followed by OFST to indicate the amplitude has been externally altered.

Suppose you wish to use the TG and 2711 with a device that has a 75 Ω input and output, and the desired reference level unit is the dBmV. To carry out a measurement:

- Insert a matching minimum loss pad such as the optional accessory (P/N 131-4199-00) available for the 2711 into the TG output and the 2711 input.
- Call up the INPUT Menu and select DBMV (**[INPUT] [3] [1]**). Notice that the TG output level units as well as the reference units change.

- Again call up the INPUT Menu and enter -7.5 dB to account for the external attenuation/impedance change of the minimum loss pad on the 2711 Input ([INPUT] [6] [1] and follow the prompts).
- Call up the DEMOD/TG Menu and enter -4.0 dB to account for the external attenuation/impedance change of the pad on the TG output ([DEMOD/ TG] [8] [1] and follow the prompts). The value is different because the impedance change is in the opposite direction. Return to the spectral display. TG output level should indicate 33.0DBMV.
- To verify your setup, connect the two pads together with a short cable. Set the center frequency to 100 MHz, the span to 1 MHz/div, and turn on a marker. Change the reference level until the sweep is within one division of the top graticule line. The measured amplitude should agree with the indicated TG output to within a fraction of a dB.
- Set the TG output to the required level, and the 2711 parameters to those desired for the measurement. Adjust the reference level as needed to get the sweep to the top of the screen, and then save the sweep in the A register. (For amplifiers it is best to adjust the reference level so the sweep is below the top of the screen.)
- Now connect the output of the pad on the TG to the input of the device under test, and the device output to the input of the pad on the 2711 Input. Carry out your measurement in the B,C MINUS A mode.

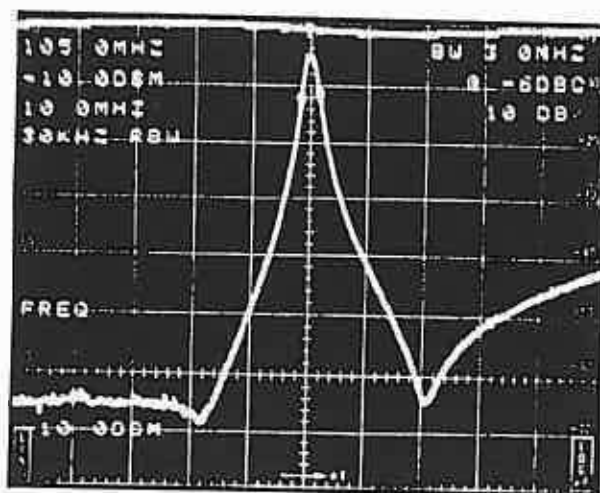


Figure 6-18. Bandpass filter response using the 2711 optional tracking generator and B,C MINUS A mode.

A Practical Example

Figure 6-18 shows the frequency response of a passive bandpass filter near its resonant frequency (105 MHz). To obtain the display, the TG output was first connected directly to the 2711 input. The sweep at the top of the figure was obtained and saved in the A register. It represents the combined TG/2711 response over the displayed frequency span. The bandpass filter was then substituted for the device under test in Figure 6-17, and the instrument placed in B,C MINUS A mode. This approach subtracts the measured instrumentation response (the A sweep) from the combined filter/instrumentation response to obtain the true filter response in the B register. The instrument was set as indicated by the on-screen readouts. Notice that the bandwidth feature ([APPL] [0]) is also enabled.

UTIL

The Utility (UTIL) Menu provides access to system configuration and initialization features, front-panel settings and waveform storage facilities, instrument normalization and diagnostics, and other miscellaneous functions. Some of the selections within the UTIL Menu and its sub-menus are only used by service personnel. Therefore, not all selections are discussed here.

You have already used the UTIL Menu to restore the factory default power-up settings. **Do it again now by pressing:**

[UTIL] [1] [1]

900.0MHZ	(AUTO SWEEP)	ATTN 50DB
20.0DBM		VF WIDE
180MHZ/ MAX		10 DB/
5MHZ RBW (AUTO)		

Menu-Entered Control Settings

Although the instrument controls are most conveniently activated or set using the dedicated front-panel controls, the UTIL Menu provides a method of setting all the major control functions from a single sub-menu. This feature is especially useful when you are setting up a new measurement, and know ahead of time how the instrument is to be configured. In the following example, you are going to use the Utility Menu to set the center frequency, reference level, and span. You may also set the resolution bandwidth, video filter, vertical scale, and sweep rate from this menu.

Turn on the calibrator, and then press [UTIL] [2] to select the KEYPAD ENTERED SETTINGS from the UTIL Menu. This item enables you to set instrument controls to specific values from a single menu without having to use the front-panel controls.

Select Item 0, FREQUENCY, from the KEYPAD ENTERED SETTINGS Menu. Following the prompt, enter a value of 100.000 MHz for the center frequency. The KEYPAD ENTERED SETTINGS Menu shows the frequency to three decimal places, whereas the on-screen readout displays the specified frequency from zero to four decimal places depending on the span. Both

values are truncated figures, but the 2711 still controls the frequency to the nearest Hertz specified. The number of decimal places in the on-screen readout is commensurate with the screen resolution at the selected span.

You can also enter decimal values for the reference level and span. Select Items 1 and 2 and enter values of -22.28 dBm and 22.6832 MHz/division, respectively. The instrument rounds and stores the reference level to one decimal place (0.1 dB). The span is rounded and stored to three decimal places, but in the spectral display both the reference level and span are shown rounded to one place.

Leave the remaining parameters set as they are, but note the following:

- RF attenuation can be set to AUTO (the default), or fixed from 0 to 50 dB in 2 dB steps.
- The resolution bandwidth can be set to AUTO (the default), 3 kHz, 30 kHz, 300 kHz, or 5 MHz. If you enter another value, the 2711 will convert it to the nearest available value.
- This menu provides the only method of manually setting the video filter bandwidth. The video filter bandwidth can be set to AUTO (1/100 of the resolution bandwidth in normal mode) or fixed from 3 Hz to 300 kHz in a 1-3 sequence (3 Hz, 10 Hz,... 100 kHz, 300 kHz). Other values are converted to the nearest permissible values.
- Selecting item 6, VERTICAL SCALE, calls up another menu which enables you to select any of the normal values of 10 dB/division, 5 dB/division, 1 dB/division, or Linear.
- Sweep rate can be set from 1 microsecond/division to 2 second/division in a 1-2-5 sequence. Other values will be converted to the nearest permissible value. Rates faster than 100 microsecond/division can be used only with analog displays (display storage turned off).

Press [UTIL] to return to the spectral display and view the screen you have created.

Return to the KEYPAD ENTERED SETTINGS Menu and enter a span/div of 20 MHz and a reference level of -20 dBm. Restore the spectral display by pressing [UTIL].

Saving and Recalling Settings and Displays

The 2711 enables you to save and recall up to 36 sets of control settings and any saved displays that accompany them. These are in addition to the factory default power-up settings that are permanently stored in the instrument. The 2711 also automatically saves the settings/displays in use (in location 0) when it is powered down. You can manually save up to 35 additional setting/display groups, and designate one group as the power-up settings.

A general word of caution; the 2711 will not allow you to destroy a currently saved display. If you attempt to recall settings (with or without corresponding displays), you will receive this message:

CANNOT OVERWRITE SAVED DISPLAY

The settings will be recalled along with any displays saved in registers that are not currently saved, but currently saved registers will not be overwritten. To recall a previously saved display, first unsave (clear) its destination register.

Recalling Last Power-Down Settings

Turn off the instrument and then turn it on again. You will now recall the power-down settings from memory.

Call up the UTIL Menu and select item 1, STORED SETTINGS/ DISPLAYS. Choose item 0, LAST POWER-DOWN, from the secondary menu that appears. The settings that were in effect the last time power to the 2711 was turned off are immediately recalled.

100.0MHZ	(AUTO SWEEP)	ATTN 10DB
-20.0DBM		VF WIDE
20.0MHZ/		10 DB/
5MHZ RBW (AUTO)	CALIBRATOR	

User-Defined Power-Up Settings

Throughout this manual you have used the preceding LAST POWER DOWN parameters for many of your experiments. Now you will make them the power-up parameters.

Call up the UTIL Menu and select item 1, STORED SETTINGS/ DISPLAYS. From the secondary menu that appears, select item 2, USER DEFINED POWER-UP. Following the prompt, press [X] to store the current settings. You are warned if other settings are already stored as the user-defined power-up. In that case, delete the old settings by pressing [Y], and then [W] to confirm the deletion. Then store the current settings.

Turn the Instrument's power off and back on. During the standby period, the factory default power-up settings are displayed, but immediately afterwards the settings you just stored are automatically implemented.

At power-up the 2711 restores the user-defined power-up settings, if they exist, following the standby period. If they do not exist, it uses the factory default settings. If the user-defined power-up settings include a narrow span, the **NORMALIZATION SUGGESTED** message may appear. The message should disappear following warm-up, as soon as you use a control.

Randomly change the measurement parameters, then re-initialize the 2711 by pressing:

[UTIL MENU] [0]

This does one of two things. If user-defined power-up settings have been stored, they are implemented. If not, most controls are reset to the factory defaults (but a few are reset to their last power-down condition — see **Appendix C**).

Other User-Defined Settings

Each of the remaining items on the STORED SETTINGS/DISPLAYS Menu can be used exactly as you used USER DEFINED POWER-UP SETTINGS. The difference is that they are not automatically implemented at power-up, or by the initialization selection. Instead, they must be recalled from the STORED SETTINGS/DISPLAYS Menu.

Turn on the calibrator, change the frequency to 90 MHz, and the reference level to -10 dBm. Save a 16 sweep ensemble mean in register A, and save the max hold values in B. Turn off the calibrator. Call up the UTIL Menu and select STORED SETTINGS/DISPLAYS. Notice that settings 3-8 are blank², and Item 9 indicates MORE.

There are 34 fields (in addition to last power-down and user-defined power-up) contained on four menu pages in which you can save stored settings and displays. **Advance to page 4 by repeatedly pressing [9]. Return to the first page by pressing [BKSP] three times.** The register locations currently being displayed are indicated at the top right of each page (R00 - R08, R10 - R18, R20 - R28, R30 - R39).

Store the settings you entered earlier in the register 3 location by pressing [3] [X] (if there is a setting already present, delete it or use another location).

Unsave (clear) the A and B registers, and turn them off. (If you do not, you receive the CANNOT OVERWRITE SAVED DISPLAY message when you try to recall settings.) Disable MAX HOLD.

² If your Instrument has been used previously, you may find that some or all of the items already contain saved settings and displays.

Reinitialize the 2711 to your user-defined power-up settings ([UTIL] [0]). Now press [UTIL] [1]. Item 3 reads:

AB 90MHZ -10DBM 20MHZ

This message shows the primary instrument control settings that are saved in that location and tells you that waveforms in registers A and B are saved along with the settings.

Press [3] [W]. The control settings and the saved waveforms are both restored. Whenever you save settings (including LAST POWER-DOWN and USER DEFINED POWER-UP), you also store the contents of digital storage registers A, B, and C. This means you can store up to 108 waveforms as well as 36 groups of settings (actual numbers depend on what else, such as user-defined programs, is being stored). Furthermore, this information is saved even after the power is turned off. With this feature you may record waveforms in the field and bring them back to the lab for further analysis or permanent recording — or store reference waveforms in the lab for comparison in the field.

You can also store settings and waveforms by title. Using the **DSPL Menu**, create a title for the current display (see **Adding Titles and Labels** in this section). Name it **MY SETTINGS**. Turn on title mode and return to the spectral display. Press:

[UTIL] [1] [4] [X]

This saves the settings under item 4 of the **STORED SETTINGS/ DISPLAYS Menu**. Again press **[UTIL] [1]**. Item four on the menu is now **MY SETTINGS**. The settings are recalled like any other, but the title often indicates what the settings are used for.

Any control settings can be used

Normalizing the 2711

Normalization is a set of procedures contained in ROM which calculate gain and frequency characteristics of the circuits in the 2711 based on the built-in 100 MHz, -30 dBm calibration signal. The characteristics must be accurately known to correctly scale and display the analyzed signal, and to control the optional tracking generator. The normalization values are stored in non-volatile memory (NVRAM). Later you will learn how external signals can be used to achieve even greater measurement accuracy — or to normalize the reference if NVRAM should ever be lost (see *Service Normalizations* later in this section).

If the self-test feature detects that the present instrument gain or frequency characteristics differ significantly from those determined during the previous normalization, it displays:

NORMALIZATION SUGGESTED

at mid-screen. When this message appears, you should then perform a normalization, although the instrument remains usable for "rough" measurements. The NORMALIZATION SUGGESTED message may also appear while the instrument is warming up, especially if the user-defined power-up settings include a narrow span. This is normal. Under these conditions you need not perform a normalization unless the message persists beyond the warm up period. Any time you require the utmost accuracy, we recommend a normalization first. Normalization may be required for any of these reasons:

- Circuit or component variation with time (drift)
- Large temperature difference from that at which previous normalization was carried out
- Non-Volatile Memory (NVRAM) is lost for any reason

Always perform the normalizations in environments, especially temperatures, similar to those in which the subsequent measurements will be carried out. Remove all input signals from the instrument before performing amplitude or frequency normalizations. Although we recommend that you wait a full 15 minutes after power-up before making measurements with the 2711 (it is within tolerance by then), it is possible to make them shortly after power-up. If you must make measurements immediately after the instrument is turned on and the NORMALIZATION SUGGESTED message is on-screen, then carry out a normalization directly. Note, however, that if you do so, the instrument may require normalization again after it is fully warmed up.

Call up the UTIL Menu and select Item 3, NORMALIZATIONS. The NORMALIZATIONS Menu enables you to normalize the amplitude parameters (AMPLITUDE ONLY), the frequency parameters (FREQUENCY ONLY), or both (ALL PARAMETERS). It takes longer for amplitude normalization than for frequency normalization, and several minutes for both. To ensure the 2711 is measuring amplitude and frequency as accurately as possible, we recommend that you routinely select ALL PARAMETERS.

NOTE

If Option 04 (Tracking Generator) is installed, another choice, TRACKING GENERATOR ONLY, is also offered. See Normalizing the Tracking Generator. The ALL PARAMETERS selection does not normalize the TG.

To continue with the amplitude and frequency normalization, ensure that all signals are disconnected from the 2711 Input. Then select Item 0, ALL PARAMETERS.

Typically, you will see a number of changing waveforms and messages on-screen telling you which normalizations are being carried out. However, if NVRAM is ever lost, the factory reference normalizations are lost with it (see the ***If You Lose NVRAM*** in this section). Then, regardless of which normalizations you are carrying out, you will receive this message:

**** ONE OR MORE REFERENCE NORMALIZATIONS HAS NOT BEEN PERFORMED.**

**** FOR OPTIMUM ACCURACY, REFERENCE
NORMALIZATIONS MUST BE DONE**

**** CONSULT MANUAL FOR PROCEDURE**

PRESS "W" TO CONTINUE

PRESS "Z" TO ABORT

If you have facilities to carry out the reference normalizations (see Service Normalizations in this section), abort this process and perform the reference normalizations before continuing. Otherwise, press [W] to continue. A recently normalized instrument is more accurate than an unnormalized one, even if the references have not been normalized.

The normalization process executes without further operator intervention. When it is complete, a tone sounds (if the audio alert is enabled — see *The Audio Alert* later in this section) and this message appears:

NORMALIZATION COMPLETE

If you receive a message that either frequency or amplitude normalization failed, try the procedure again. In case of repeated failures contact your Tektronix Service Center. The spectral display reappears automatically upon completion of normalization.

System Configuration

Call up the UTIL Menu and select Item 4, SYSTEM CONFIGURATION. The SYSTEM CONFIGURATION Menu presents nine choices. Each selection is described here.

Configuring the Communications Port (Option 03 or 08 Only)

When either Option 03 (GPIB) or Option 08 (RS-232) is installed, the 2711 is equipped with a digital communications port for use with an external instrument controller, or a printer/plotter. The RS-232 port is modem-compatible, and makes possible remote instrument operation via telephone lines. Port connectors are located on the rear panel. See section 7.

The *2711 Programmer Manual* contains additional information about setting up and configuring the 2711 for remote or automated operations and complete explanations of the commands that are used.

Select Item 0 from the **SYSTEM CONFIGURATION Menu**. The **COMMUNICATION PORT CONFIG Menu** appears.

If the GPIB port is installed the menu lists:

0 GPIB OFF LINE/ADDR #

If the port is currently active, its GPIB address (0-30) is displayed at the end of the line. Otherwise, the line ends with OFF LINE.

If the RS-232 port is installed, the menu lists:

2 RS-232 OFF LINE/BAUD RATE

If the port is currently active, its baud rate is displayed at the end of the line (for example, 9600). Otherwise, the line ends with OFF LINE.

GPIB Configuration — To configure the 2711 for GPIB operation, select Item 0, GPIB, on the COMMUNICATION PORT CONFIG Menu. The GPIB PORT CONFIGURATION Menu appears.

Item 0 enables you to toggle the GPIB port on and off line. The port must be on line to communicate with any other device.

Item 1 specifies the primary address of the 2711 (secondary addresses are not supported), which can be any value from 0 to 30. When the 2711 is used with a system controller, the value must match that used to configure the controller. The address 0 is usually reserved for the controller itself. When the 2711 is used in the TALK ONLY mode with a plotter, any address can be used. The address you set is read immediately by the instrument and retained in NVRAM until you change it.

Item 2 determines whether the 2711 generates a service request (SRQ) at power up. Because there is normally no need for a SRQ at power up, the default setting of item 2, POWER ON SRQ, is OFF. However, in some cases you may want to sense that power has been turned on before continuing your test. For those cases you can toggle the POWER ON SRQ to ON by pressing [2].

Item 3, EOI/LF MODE, sets the end-of-message designator. When a message is transmitted over the GPIB, the instrument sending the message signifies to other instruments on the bus (including the system controller) that the message has been completed. This can be done in two ways.

- The interface management line named End Or Identify (EOI) is asserted (brought to its low state) simultaneously with the last data byte that is transmitted.
- The ASCII codes for carriage return (CR) and line feed (LF) are appended to the message. EOI is still asserted simultaneously with the transmission of LF.

All Tektronix instruments and controllers use EOI. You should, therefore toggle Item 3 until the end of the line indicates EOI. The EOI/LF MODE option is included for controllers which do not use the EOI signal line. The option selected is retained in NVRAM until you change it.

Item 4, TALK ONLY MODE, must be set to OFF when the Spectrum Analyzer is used with a controller, because the controller determines whether the instrument is talking or listening. If you normally use the instrument with a controller, set the TALK ONLY MODE to OFF.

However, to send 2711 screen plot data directly to a GPIB plotter without a controller, set the TALK ONLY MODE to ON and disconnect all instruments except the 2711 and the plotter from the bus. Place the plotter in the listen only mode (usually done with controls on the plotter). With the talk only and listen only modes selected, you can send screen data from the 2711 to the plotter by pressing [PLOT].

RS-232 Configuration — To configure the 2711 for RS-232 operation, select Item 2, RS-232, on the **COMMUNICATION PORT CONFIG Menu**. The RS-232 PORT CONFIGURATION Menu appears. Several choices are offered; in all cases the instrument settings must match those used by the controller or printer/plotter.

Item 0, STATUS, toggles the RS-232 port on and off line. The port must be on-line to communicate with any other device.

Item 1, BAUD RATE, cycles through the baud rate of the port. Possible baud rates are:

110	600	4800
150	1200	9600
300	2400	

Normally you set this parameter to as large a value as possible to hasten data transfer. However, the controller, or the printer/plotter, must support data transfers at the same rate. When 110 is selected, two stop bits are automatically used. Any other value automatically uses one stop bit. The default value is 9600.

Item 2, DATA BITS, determines the number of data bits per word. The default is eight bits and is required for binary data transfers. Seven bits can be used for ASCII character transfers.

Item 3, PARITY, cycles between NONE, ODD, and EVEN. NONE is the default.

Item 4, EOL, sets the end-of-message designator. When a message is transmitted via RS-232, the instrument sending the message signifies that the message has been completed. Hard-wire termination is not possible with RS-232 as it is with GPIB, but item 4 enables you to select CR (carriage return), LF (linefeed), or CR LF (both).

Item 5, FLOW CONTROL, specifies the type of handshaking that will be used. Three choices are possible:

HARD (RTS/CTS)

The RTS, CTS, DTR lines are used. The DCD and DSR lines are ignored. This mode facilitates binary transfers.

SOFT (XON/XOFF)

XON/XOFF (CTRL Q/CTRL S) protocol is used. Only transmit and receive lines are needed, but RTS and DTR must be forced true. Suitable for use with a modem. However, code conflicts make binary transfers unreliable.

NONE

No flow control is used, but RTS and DTR must be forced true. Suitable for use with a modem. However, the user is responsible for ensuring data buffers do not overflow.

Item 6, ECHO, is a toggle intended for use with "dumb" terminals. When ECHO is ON, the 2711 sends the character it has just received back to the terminal causing it to appear on the terminal screen. CTRL Q and CTRL S are not echoed.

Item 7, VERBOSE, is another on/off toggle. When VERBOSE is ON, a response is returned to the controller following each command or query. The response may be an event code, the correct query response, or a simple "OK" for a completed command not normally requiring a response. When VERBOSE is OFF, only responses to queries are generated.

Selecting the Screen Plotter Configuration

Whichever communications port is installed in your instrument, the spectral display and its attendant information can be sent to a printer or plotter by pressing [PLOT], but you must first correctly configure the interface.

To configure the port in your instrument for use with your printer or plotter, select Item 1 of the SYSTEM CONFIGURATION Menu, SCREEN PLOT CONFIGURATION.

Item 0, COMM PORT, on the SCREEN PLOT CONFIGURATION Menu indicates which communications port is installed in your instrument. No operator action is needed, although your print/plot device must also have a corresponding interface (GPIB or RS-232).

Item 1, PLOTTER LANGUAGE, cycles through the printer and plotter models supported by the 2711. **Repeatedly select Item 1 from the menu.** Each time you press [1], the printer or plotter displayed at the end of the line changes. EPSON FX (the default) refers to FX-series printers produced by Epson, and HPGL stands for Hewlett Packard Graphics Language. **Stop when the model of your printer/plotter (or the one yours emulates) is displayed.**

If you set Item 1 to a plotter, plot speed and number of plots per page options appear on the SCREEN PLOT CONFIGURATION Menu. **Repeatedly select Item 2, PLOT SPEED, to cycle through the available speeds of FAST, FASTER, FASTEST, SLOW, and NORMAL (the default).** Try the various speeds with your plotter to see which produces the most satisfactory results. Printers do not support these options.

If you select four plots per page, a plot position option appears which enables you to select the quadrant of the paper on which the current plot will be placed. **Repeatedly select Item 4, PLOT POSITION, to cycle through the available positions.**

Item 5 on the SCREEN PLOT CONFIGURATION Menu determines whether or not graticule lines are printed on the hard copy output. Status of the plotted graticule lines is independent of whether the on-screen graticule illumination is on or off. **Press [5] to toggle the GRATICULE LINES ON PLOT between ON and OFF.**

Selecting the Printer Configuration

Certain features such as SIGNAL SEARCH enable you to send ASCII character strings to the 2711's display CRT or to the optional RS-232 port. You cannot send these strings to a GPIB device.

Return to the SYSTEM CONFIGURATION Menu ([UTIL] [4]) and select Item 2, PRINTER CONFIGURATION. Then select Item 0, PRINTER DEVICE.

If the RS-232 interface is installed, the PRINTER DEVICE will toggle between TTY00 and CRT. If RS-232 is not installed, CRT is always displayed. **Select CRT if you want results that would**

normally be sent to a printer to be displayed on the 2711 screen. Instead, On-screen display is sometimes not satisfactory if there is more than one screen of data, because only the last screen remains visible.

Changes to this setting are not retained in NVRAM.

Instrument Configuration

Item 3, INSTRUMENT CONFIGURATION, of the System Configuration Menu enables you to reset 2711 internal parameters and conditions. Some of the more useful ones are described in the following subsections.

The Audio Alert

Item 0, AUDIO ALERT, of the INSTRUMENT CONFIGURATION Menu is a four-step sequencer whose status is indicated at the end of the line. You can choose OFF, KEYCLICK ONLY, ERROR ONLY, or KEYCLICK & ERROR.

OFF

The 2711 creates no audible tones.

KEYCLICK ONLY

The 2711 emits a short tone when a key is pressed.

ERROR ONLY

This is the factory default. A tone occurs only when the 2711 issues an alarm, error, or warning message. The alert sounds only once, even if the condition repeats, but a displayed message is repeated.

KEYCLICK & ERROR

Combination of KEYCLICK ONLY and ERROR ONLY modes.

Switch the audio alert to the setting of your choice.

Setting the Minimum Signal Size

Minimum signal size is the smallest amplitude difference that must exist between signal peaks for them to be recognized as separate peaks during "Next Higher" and "Next Lower" or marker arrow key operations. This parameter is expressed in bits; full scale equals 255 bits. The minimum value is 2 bits. Factory default is 20 bits or approximately 8% of full scale (three minor divisions).

Select Item 1, MINIMUM SIGNAL SIZE, from the INSTRUMENT CONFIGURATION Menu. Type a new value and enter it by pressing [W]. The new value appears at the end of item 1. Experiment if you wish, then restore the factory default value.

Sending Waveforms to a Computer

Item 2 of the INSTRUMENT CONFIGURATION Menu, WAVEFORM TO PRINTER ([UTIL] [4] [3] [2]), sends a binary or ASCII representation of the displayed waveform to the serial port following each sweep. An RS-232 port (Option 08) is required, and PRINTER CONFIGURATION ([UTIL] [4] [2] [0]) must be set to TTY00.

Item 2 toggles data transmission ON and OFF; item 3 toggles the data format between ASCII and binary.

This feature is used primarily for certain procedures at the factory. We recommend that you leave WAVEFORM TO PRINTER turned off.

300.0MHZ	(AUTO SWEEP)	ATTN 10DB
-20.0DBM		VF WIDE
50.0MHZ/		10 DB/
5MHZ RBW (AUTO)	CALIBRATOR	

Turning Frequency Corrections On and Off

During normal operation, the 2711 periodically computes frequency corrections (to compensate for short-term drift within the instrument) and applies them to the displayed trace. This occurs between sweeps. You can shorten the inter-sweep interval by

disabling the frequency corrections, although some frequency accuracy may be sacrificed, and the signal may drift off screen at small spans/div.

NOTE

Short Holdoff mode reduces the inter-sweep interval even further, but also disables most marker measurement modes.

Observe the spectral display for a few sweeps. You will see a slight pause that occurs occasionally between sweeps. This is the period during which the corrections are computed and implemented.

Reduce the span to 50.0 kHz/div. Watch the signal peak for several minutes, and notice how it drifts away from center screen and then is centered as corrections are computed and implemented.

Item 5, FREQUENCY CORRECTIONS, from the INSTRUMENT CONFIGURATION Menu is a toggle that enables you to turn the corrections off and on. **Press [5] to turn off the corrections, and then return to the spectral display.** Notice how the signal now drifts continuously. **Select Item 5 again to turn the frequency corrections back on.** Return to the spectral display, and note that the signal is again centered.

The Spectral Display In Menus

Press [UTIL] [4] [3] to activate the INSTRUMENT CONFIGURATION Menu. Repeatedly select Item 6, SPECTRAL DISPLAY IN MENUS. This feature superimposes the spectral display over the menu. Some users prefer to have the display present when working with menus, others do not. **For now, leave the display turned on.**

Changing the Sweep Holdoff

There is a holdoff period between the end of one sweep and the start of the next to give circuits within the 2711 time to stabilize. For faster response time when continuous observation of signals is necessary, the delay can be minimized by entering short holdoff mode. When using short holdoff in AUTO sweep mode, a fictitious signal sometimes appears at the left edge of the screen.

NOTE

Turning on SHORT HOLDOFF disables frequency corrections and most marker measurement modes.

Ensure the spectral display is turned on in the menus and select Item 7, SWEEP HOLDOFF, from the INSTRUMENT CONFIGURATION Menu. Messages appear indicating which features are sacrificed when using short holdoff. Read the messages, and then press [W] to continue. The SWEEP HOLDOFF status switches from NORMAL to SHORT HOLDOFF and a signal peak may appear at the left edge of the screen.

Reset the sweep holdoff to NORMAL and turn off the SPECTRAL DISPLAY IN MENUS.

Setting the Date and Time (Option 03 and 08 Only)

When an optional communications port (Options 03 and 08) is installed, the 2711 contains a real-time clock with battery backup power. The clock is used to display the date and time and/or to label printer/plotter outputs.

To set the real-time clock, return to the SYSTEM CONFIGURATION Menu ([UTIL] [4]) and select Item 4, REAL-TIME CLOCK SETUP. Select Items 0 - 5 to update the clock. Terminate each entry by pressing [W]. Select Item 6 to toggle the clock display on or off in the menu, the spectral display, and printer/plotter outputs. Press [UTIL] to return to the spectral display.

Protecting Stored Settings

Call up the **SYSTEM CONFIGURATION Menu ([UTIL] [4])**.
Toggle Item 5, **STORED SETTINGS PROTECT**, to ensure the end-of-line status indicator is set to **ON**.

Press **[BKSP]** to return to the **UTIL Menu**, and select **STORED SETTINGS/DISPLAYS**. Attempt to delete any stored setting. This message appears:

ONLY WAVEFORMS DELETED

When **STORED SETTINGS PROTECT** is turned on you cannot delete the stored settings, but waveforms stored with them will be deleted.

Turn **STORED SETTINGS PROTECT** off.

The 2711 File System

The 2711 stores settings, waveforms and other data in a system of files in **NVRAM**. Normally you will not alter those files.

To view a directory of existing file names, press:

[UTIL] [4] [6]

File names are established by the firmware. Table 6-5 lists the file names and describes their contents. Files are created only as required. That is, you will not find a **BSET03** settings file unless you have previously saved the B-register settings in the third storage location.

DSET00 and **SET0BU** are special files. They are created automatically by the 2711 and contain the D-register settings used when the instrument was last turned off. **SET0BU** is a backup in case **DSET00** is corrupted during a power-down-up cycle.

Other files of a temporary or transitory nature may also be created by the instrument for internal purposes.

Table 6-2. The 2711 file system.

<p>Settings files: Each file saves the 2711 control settings for a particular register (A, B, C, D) in a designated location (00-39). BSET03 saves B-register settings in the number 3 location.</p> <p>Curve files: Each file saves curve data from register A, B, or C in a designated location (00-39). D-register curves are never saved. AWFM04 saves the A-register curve in location 4.</p> <p>User-Definable Program (UDP) files: Each file saves a keystroke sequence representing a particular UDP in a designated location (0-8). UDP1 is the second user-defined program.</p> <p>Antenna Table files: Each file saves the antenna table in a designated location (1-5) representing antenna data for a particular antenna. ACF3 saves the antenna information in location 3.</p> <p>Normalization file: Normalization files save the data generated by normalizing the 2711, including reference and TG normalizations.</p>				
FILE NAMES				
Curves	Settings	User-Defined Programs	Antenna Tables	Normalizations
nWFM00	nSET00	UDP0	ACF1	NORM
:	:	:	:	
nWFM39	nSET39	UDP8	ACF5	
n=A,B,C	n=A,B,C,D			
Several other files representing system parameters may also be present:				
NAME	DESCRIPTION	NAME	DESCRIPTION	
S_RTC	Real-time clock config.	12.88	Version	
SETUP	Instrument config.	S_GPIB	GPIB Config.	
SEARCH	Signal search config.	S_TTYx	RS-232 config.	
S_PLOT	Plotter config.			

Protecting Files

Files you wish to preserve such as waveform, settings, or UDP files can be protected from accidental erasure in several ways. For instance, UDP files can be selectively protected from the USER DEF Menu, while all settings files can be protected by pressing [UTIL] [4] [5].

However, to selectively protect individual files in the file system, first determine its file number by viewing the file directory ([UTIL] [4] [6]). The number is listed under the FID column in the directory. Return to the SYSTEM CONFIGURATION Menu and select Item 7, PROTECT FILE. Following the on-screen prompt, enter the number of the file you want to protect. Confirm your selection by pressing [W]. It is now impossible to delete the file without first unprotecting it.

To unprotect a previously protected file, repeat the foregoing process. The process constitutes a toggle which alternately protects and unprotects the designated file.

A word of caution: unless you have specific reasons for doing otherwise, do not protect system parameter and normalization files (see Table 6-2). Doing so may prevent the instrument from carrying out its normal functions, or updating data.

Confirming Installed Options

If you are in doubt as to which options are installed in your instrument, press:

[UTIL] [4]

Item 9 on the SYSTEM CONFIGURATION Menu is labeled INSTALLED OPTIONS DISPLAY. Select Item 9. The display begins by listing the instrument's firmware version and the Tektronix copyright. Below that, two columns list the options installed in your instrument. You will see a readout similar to this one:

GPIB	VIDEO MONITOR
TRACKING GEN	

This display indicates which options are actually installed, for

example, Options 03 (GPIB), 04 (Tracking Generator), and 10 (Video Monitor). The list you see depends upon the options installed in your instrument. The following options may be listed here:

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
02	COUNTER
03	GPIB
04	TRACKING GEN
08	RS-232
10	VIDEO MONITOR

The number following NVM (non-volatile memory) is for internal Tektronix use only and of no value to the user.

Any control settings can be used

Instrument Diagnostics and Adjustments

Many of the items within the INSTRUMENT DIAGNOSTICS AND ADJUSTMENTS Menu are intended for servicing the 2711. However, those selections that may be used to verify instrument performance are discussed. Items not discussed are reserved for service personnel or for use under factory supervision.

Call up the UTIL Menu and select Item 5, INSTR DIAGNOSTICS/ADJUSTMENTS.

Aligning the Display

NOTE

This procedure will overwrite saved waveforms without warning.

To align the display, select **MANUAL ADJUSTMENTS** from the **INSTR DIAGNOSTICS/ADJUSTMENTS** Menu, and then select **DISPLAY STORAGE CAL** from the resulting **MANUAL ADJUSTMENTS** Menu ([UTIL] [5] [2] [2]).

This selection creates a checkerboard display used to adjust trace position and rotation. The trace rotation, vertical, and horizontal alignment controls are located on the rear panel (see *Miscellaneous Controls* in section 5).

Turn the **TRACE ROT** control until the checkerboard test pattern is aligned with the graticule. Adjust the **VERT POS** control until the top line of the pattern coincides with the top graticule line. Last, turn the **HORIZ POS** control until the vertical center line of the display coincides with the center vertical line of the graticule.

After completing the alignment, repeatedly press [UTIL] until the spectral display returns.

Service Normalizations

The 2711 contains a set of frequency and amplitude normalization values when it is shipped from the factory. The normalizations are based on reference values, called reference normalizations, determined at the time of manufacture. The reference normalizations specify the gain step sizes, and the frequency and amplitude of the internal calibrator signal. The references are determined by comparison with an accurate external attenuator and signal source. If NVRAM is ever lost (for instance, because the battery runs down), the factory reference normalizations are lost, and a service reference normalization must be performed to achieve maximum accuracy. If you have signal sources available which are more precise than the on-board calibration signal, they can be used to achieve added accuracy when normalizing the instrument.

Select Item 5, **SERVICE NORMALIZATIONS**, from the **INSTR DIAGNOSTICS/ADJUSTMENTS Menu ([UTIL MENU] [5] [5])**. Using the **REFERENCE NORMALIZATIONS** selection from the **SERVICE NORMALIZATIONS Menu**, you can measure new reference values for the on-board calibration signal and attenuator with respect to more precisely known alternate sources. The alternate sources must exceed these specifications:

- frequency: 5 parts in $10^7 \pm 10$ Hz
- amplitude: -30 ± 0.1 dBm @ 100 ± 1 MHz
- attenuation (gain step): 10 ± 0.5 dB @ 100 ± 1 MHz

We will not give examples for all reference normalizations, but we will show you how to determine a new frequency reference.

Connect an external frequency source to the 2711 Input meeting the frequency specification given above. Various sources are available: WWV in the U.S., some broadcast television carriers (check with the station), assorted frequency standards, etc. A frequency between 100 MHz to 500 MHz is preferred, but signals having frequencies as low as 5 MHz may be used.

Return to the spectral display and press [CTR-MEAS/TRKG] once time to ensure the external reference is centered. Then select item 1, REFERENCE NORMALIZATIONS, from the SERVICE NORMALIZATIONS Menu. Next select item 1, INTERNAL REF FREQ, from the resulting REFERENCE NORMALIZATIONS Menu. On-screen prompts appear for each of the reference normalizations. Select item 1 and enter the frequency of the external source. Now simply select item 2 and press [W] when you are ready to have the 2711 determine the new reference. After a few seconds you will receive a NORMALIZATION COMPLETE message.

Procedures for determining new gain step and amplitude references are performed in a similar fashion (follow the prompts).

After you determine the new reference values, complete the process of optimizing the measurement accuracy by performing a complete normalization ([UTIL MENU] [3] [0]).

The remaining items on the **SERVICE NORMALIZATIONS Menu** are normally used only by service personnel. However, menu item 4 may be used to view selected normalization values, and item 5

sends the normalization values to a printer when Option 08 is installed. These may be useful for future reference. Item 6 sends any messages that occur during normalization to the printer.

To obtain a hard copy of the normalization values, place your Epson FX-compatible printer on-line (sorry, a plotter will not work unless it can emulate an FX-series printer) with the paper in correct position, and select Item 5 from the SERVICE NORMALIZATIONS Menu. Printing starts immediately. Control of the 2711 is returned following printout.

If You Lose NVRAM

The NVRAM is powered by lithium batteries. Battery life is limited to a few years (see Table 2-6 in Section 2, *Specifications*).

WARNING

Handling and disposing of lithium cells can be hazardous. Refer all battery maintenance to a Tektronix service center.

When the batteries become weak, all the contents of NVRAM are lost. This includes all stored settings, tables, waveforms, and all normalization data. To prevent inadvertent loss of the reference normalizations, routinely return your 2711 to Tektronix for battery replacement. When a Tektronix service center replaces your battery, it also normalizes the references ensuring that your instrument will operate within its specifications.

If NVRAM is ever lost in the field, you may have to normalize the 2711. **To begin the process, press [UTIL] [3] [1] to carry out a frequency normalization.** The instrument will use default reference values from internal EPROM's or DIP switches. The default values will not result in optimum accuracy, but will enable you to make approximate measurements. More importantly, they will enable you to carry out the reference normalizations required to ensure the instrument is fully within its specification and operating at maximum accuracy.

Follow the instructions in *Service Normalizations* and the resulting on-screen prompts to perform the service reference normalizations.

After the reference normalizations are complete, press [UTIL] [3] [0] to complete the frequency and amplitude normalizations.

If external reference sources are not available, simply perform the frequency and amplitude normalizations ([UTIL] [3] [0]). The 2711 will be usable, but the references should be normalized at the earliest opportunity. If the battery is too weak, you will have to normalize the 2711 each time it is used until the battery is replaced.

Any control settings can be used

Generating a Service Request (Options 03 and 08 Only)

UTIL Menu item 6, SERVICE REQUEST, enables you to manually generate a service request (SRQ) whenever required for testing or other purposes. See the *2711 Programmer Manual* for detailed information about SRQs and their uses.

To generate an SRQ, press [UTIL] [6]. If the communications port is on line, the request is generated immediately and reflected on-screen by the message REQUEST at bottom center (if the port is off line, nothing happens). The message remains on-screen until serviced by the controller, or until the communications port is cycled on and off line using [UTIL] [4] [0] [0] [0] or [UTIL] [4] [0] [2] [0].

NOTE

The techniques for reporting the event causing an SRQ are different for GPIB and RS-232. See the 2711 Programmer Manual.

Printing The On-screen Readouts (Option 08 Only)

The UTIL Menu also enables you to print the on-screen readouts on an FX-series printer. The instrument must be equipped with the optional RS-232 port (Option 08), and the printer must be connected directly to the port. Further, the RS-232 port must be on line to use this feature. Each on-screen line is terminated with a linefeed regardless of the terminator selected from the RS-232 configuration menu.

Printing the on-screen readouts can be useful if you wish to print results during a user-defined program (UDP) sequence. For instance, suppose that you perform a marker peak find function during the UDP. The frequency and amplitude of the signal are displayed at the upper right of the screen (the normal marker readouts).

To print the readouts via the RS-232 port, ensure your printer is powered up, on line and ready. Place the RS-232 port on line ([UTIL] [4] [0] [2]), and press [UTIL] [9] [0]. This selects the PRINT READOUTS selection under the MORE heading (item 9) of the UTIL Menu. Printing begins immediately.

100.0MHZ	(AUTO SWEEP)	ATTN 10DB
-20.0DBM		VF 300KHZ
1.0MHZ/		10 DB/
300KHZ RBW (AUTO)		

SWP/TRIG

☐ The Sweep/Trigger (SWP/TRIG) Menu selects one of several useful trigger modes. During normal operation of the instrument, the sweep generator is free running. A new sweep begins as soon as possible after the end of the previous sweep (there is a small delay for frequency corrections and end-of-sweep processing). However, when performing time domain analysis or measuring pulsed signals, it may be advantageous to trigger the sweep from a characteristic of the input signal, or from another signal related to the input signal.

The SWP/TRIG Menu also enables you to specify the sweep rate and enter manual scan mode.

Free Running the Sweep Generator

Call up the SWP/TRIG Menu by pressing:

[SWP/TRIG]

Choose item 0, FREE RUN, to place the 2711 in the free running, or continuous, mode. This is the default setting, and is usually satisfactory for analyzing continuous signals. It is also a good mode for examining the time domain representation of CW and noise-like signals.

Oscilloscope Trigger Modes

In a manner that is similar to conventional oscilloscopes, you can choose the input signal, an external signal applied at the back panel of the instrument, or the AC power line as the trigger source. You do this by selecting INTERNAL, EXTERNAL, or LINE trigger from the SWP/TRIG Menu.

The INTERNAL, EXTERNAL, and LINE trigger modes cause the sweep generator to start a new sweep when the trigger signal amplitude crosses a threshold determined by the setting of the LEVEL control (inner knob to the left of [SWP/TRIG]). If the instrument is placed in zero span and linear amplitude mode, the resulting waveform resembles an oscilloscope display (detected signal amplitude vs. time).

Internal triggering requires the signal to be at least one division in amplitude (LIN or LOG mode), and is most often used for time domain analysis.

The LEVEL control stabilizes the display. It adjusts a threshold so that the sweep begins when the amplitude of the input signal crosses the threshold. For instance, you may use this mode to trigger on the leading edge of a pulsed signal, such as the output of a CW radio transmitter, a radar or sonar device, or a video modulator.

If internal triggering is used for spectral analysis, the triggering signal must be tuned to the left edge of the spectral display.

Connect an antenna or cable to the RF Input of the 2711 as outlined in *Appendix A*. Tune to a strong television video carrier and adjust the signal height to near the reference level. Set the instrument to LIN mode, zero span, and 5 MHz resolution bandwidth. Set the sweep rate to 2 msec/division and deactivate all storage registers.

You are now viewing one field of video information. The dark vertical spaces within the waveform are caused by the time taken to write the on-screen readouts. **Turn off the readouts.** The waveform on screen should resemble Figure 6-19, but it will be moving across the screen because the sweep generator is free running.

Select Item 1, INTERNAL, from the SWP/TRIG Menu and slowly rotate the LEVEL control until the display is stationary (this may be difficult to achieve if the signal is weak or noisy). The sweep is now being triggered by the vertical sync pulse.

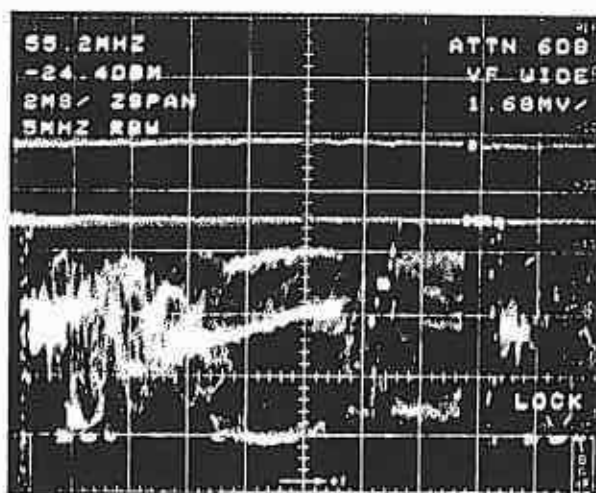


Figure 6-19. Video field using internal or TV field triggering.

External triggering is usually chosen for pulsed signal analysis when there is an externally available gate signal signifying that the signal to be examined is present at the 2711 input. For instance, the keying signal from an RF transmitter or the squelch signal in a receiver. (If the gating signal is not available, you may be able to trigger internally.) The external trigger signal is applied through a BNC connector (J102) on the rear panel. Its amplitude may range between 100 mV to 50 volts. See section 7 for additional information.

Without changing any other control settings, select Item 3, LINE, from the SWP/TRIG Menu. If the screen goes blank, readjust the LEVEL control. The sweep is triggering on a sample of the AC power line voltage. The display may be slowly drifting or stationary now. TV sweep rates are almost harmonically related to line frequency, but small, fractional Hertz differences create the slow drift.

Turn on the readouts.

100.0MHZ	(AUTO SWEEP)	ATTN 10DB
-20.0DBM		VF 300KHZ
1.0MHZ/		10 DB/
300KHZ RBW (AUTO)		

TV Line Trigger

Item 4, TV LINE, of the SWP/TRIG Menu is one of two internal triggering modes that are very useful for time-domain analysis of television signals. A horizontal sync pulse begins each TV line. You can designate the TV line standard in use (NTSC, PAL, SECAM, or OPEN) and how the line is selected using item 9, SETUP TABLE. When CONTINUOUS line triggering is selected, any sync pulse will trigger the sweep. KNOB SELECTABLE and KEYPAD ENTRY modes enable you to select a particular horizontal sync pulse as the trigger signal, but these modes are available only if Option 10 (Video Monitor) is installed. The selected line is displayed at the bottom of the right on-screen readout column. Choosing any HORIZONTAL LINE TRIGGERING mode from the Setup Table also selects TV LINE trigger mode.

To see TV line triggering work, connect an antenna or cable drop to the 2711 as outlined in *Appendix A*. Change the resolution bandwidth to 5 MHz, and tune to a strong TV video carrier. Ensure the signal peak is close to the reference level.

Call up the SWP/TRIG Menu and select Setup Table, item 9. Repeatedly select item 4, TV LINESTANDARD, until the TV line standard appropriate to your signal appears. Use the OPEN (1024 line) setting for non-standard systems.

Items 0 – 3 of the Setup Table determine which sync pulse(s) is used. Choosing any of these also selects item 4, TV LINE mode, from the SWP/TRIG Menu. Select item 0, CONTINUOUS, and then return to the spectral display. Turn off digital storage and select zero span. Enter LIN mode, and change the sweep rate to 20 μ sec/div (sweep rate is indicated in the left-hand readout column).

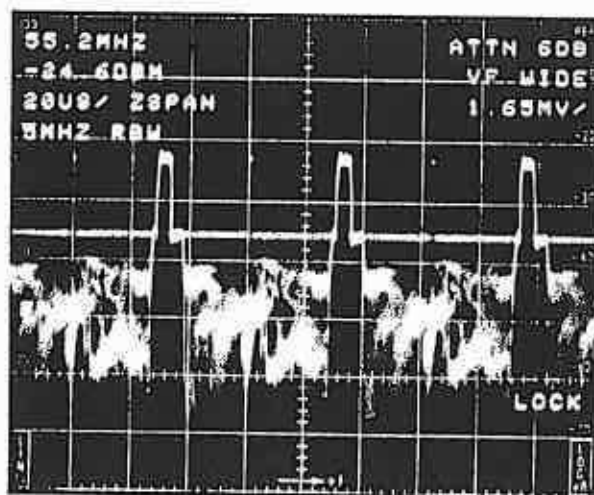


Figure 6-20. Video signal using continuous horizontal line triggering.

The screen should resemble Figure 6-20. In CONTINUOUS mode, the sweep generator is triggered by the first pulse that occurs after the 2711 enters the ready-to-be-triggered state. In other words, after the current sweep is completed, the instrument enters the ready-to-be-triggered state and is triggered by the next horizontal sync pulse that is detected. Thus, a different sync pulse generally triggers each sweep. The video signals following each sync pulse are not quite the same, but are displayed on top of each other. The result is an intense, but fuzzy, display.

To use the KNOB SELECTABLE and KEYPAD ENTRY line trigger modes, Option 10 (Video Monitor) must be installed.

Call up the Setup Table again and choose Item 1, KNOB SELECTABLE. Return to the spectral display. The tuning knob now controls which pulse is used. Pulses are numbered from 6 to 1023. The current line number (horizontal video line number and sync pulse number are the same) is displayed at the bottom of the right on-screen column. If more than one sync pulse is displayed, the number is that of the pulse nearest the left edge of the screen.

Turning the knob clockwise increases the line number and counter-clockwise decreases it. **Turn to line 17 to view several lines including the vertical interval test signal (VITS).** This signal is usually present between lines 15 and 20 in the U.S. (Figure 6-21).

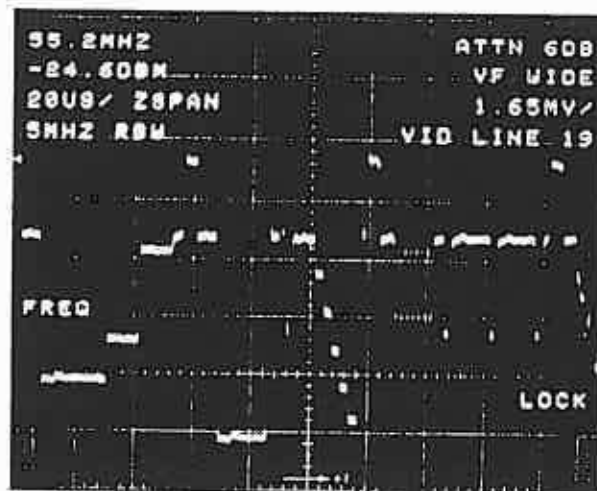


Figure 6-21. Video signal using knob-selectable horizontal line triggering (VITS visible).

The display is not as bright as it was in CONTINUOUS mode, because the instrument is triggering on, and displaying, only one horizontal line out of every field. If the display is too dim, adjust the **INTENSITY** control.

When knob-selectable TV line triggering is active, pressing [MKR/ FREQ] [2] changes the knob function from frequency control to marker control or video line selection. This is a great convenience for changing TV channels. See *Changing the Knob Function* earlier in this section for more information.

Again call up the Setup Table. If you select item 2, **KEYPAD ENTERED LINE**, the sync pulse indicated at the end of the line will be used as trigger. **Select item 3, KEYPAD ENTRY, and enter number 279 from the numeric keypad.** The number you enter appears at the end of the **KEYPAD ENTERED LINE**. This number also changes when you operate in the knob-selectable mode; it shows the number of the sync pulse last used as trigger. **Press [2] and return to the waveform display.** On most U.S. NTSC stations you now see the VITS for the second picture field.

When using the keypad-entered lines, the tuning knob controls frequency instead of line number.

TV Video Field Triggering

Item 5, TV FIELD, of the SWP/TRIG Menu is the second of two internal triggering modes that are particularly useful for time domain analysis of television signals. **Call up the SWP/TRIG Menu and choose Item 5.** The display is now being triggered by the TV vertical sync pulse which occurs near the beginning of each field. **Using the SWEEP arrow keys, slow the sweep rate to 2 msec/division.** The display resembles Figure 6-19. You can now see an entire frame of video information with the start of frame at the left of the display. The frame does not move across the screen as it does in LINE trigger mode because the sweep generator is locked to the displayed signal.

You can eliminate the dark vertical spaces in the display by turning off the readouts.

Setting the Sweep Rate

Next you will slow the sweep rate without using the SWEEP [\leftarrow][\rightarrow] keys. **Call up the SWP/TRIG Menu and choose Item 6, SWEEP RATE.** Following the prompt, enter 5 msec/div. The instrument reverts immediately to the display mode and the screen contains three complete video frames. This feature is convenient for setting the sweep rate when you are already working in the SWP/TRIG Menu or you have turned off the readouts.

Return to FREE RUN mode ([SWP/TRIG] [0]).

100.0MHZ	(AUTO SWEEP)	ATTN 10DB
-20.0DBM		VF 300KHZ
1.0MHZ/		10 DB/
300KHZ RBW (AUTO)		

Manually Scanning

Center a strong video carrier, and then call up the SWP/TRIG Menu and select Item 7, MANUAL SCAN.

The spectral display reappears, but it does not appear to be updating. Turn the Inner LEVEL control knob and watch the

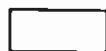
screen carefully. A portion of the display updates as you turn the knob. In this mode, the LEVEL knob controls the horizontal sweep position.

Turn the LEVEL control slowly from fully counterclockwise to fully clockwise and watch the screen update. This feature enables you to carefully examine a small portion of the spectrum. It is also convenient for manually scanning a broadcast or communications band while listening to demodulated signals. The 2711 performs like a radio receiver. The operator can stop at any station since he controls the sweep.

Toggle the manual scan mode off by selecting Item 7 again.

100.0MHZ	(AUTO SWEEP)	ATTN 10DB
-20.0DBM		VF WIDE
20MHZ/		10 DB/
5MHZ RBW (AUTO)		

USER DEF



The User-Definable (USER DEF) Menu enables you to store and execute user-definable sequences of keystrokes called routines or programs. The routines are intended to permit a series of operations to be carried out with only two keystrokes; press [USER DEF] and select the routine you want to run. This feature is particularly useful for performing a series of repetitious measurements.

Before you can use routines, they must be created, and each routine must have a well-defined starting point. One good way to ensure the routine starts with the correct instrument settings is to begin by recalling a specific group of settings. Another way is to start with a known group of settings, such as the factory or user-defined power-ups, and manually change them to the configuration at which your routine begins (this can be done within the routine, but it uses up additional memory).

In the following example, you shall acquire a 20-sweep MAX/MIN ensemble average of the instrument noise in register A with no calibration signal present, subtract the A register contents from the

B register, and display a message telling the operator to turn on the calibrator when the average is complete. The result will be the calibrator signal with the average noise subtracted out.

Begin by recalling the factory default power-up settings ([UTIL] [1] [1]) and then implementing the settings in the preceding settings box. Store the settings in location 5 ([UTIL] [1] [5] [X]).

To create the user-defined routine:

1. **Press [USER DEF] and select Item 9, USER DEF PROGRAM UTILITIES. Select Item 1, TITLE EDIT and press [W] to begin editing. Enter a title of TEST01. The procedure is the same used to title a display (see *Adding Titles and Labels* in this section). The title may be up to 28 characters long. Press [X] to store the title. Titling the routine is not mandatory (if no title is selected, the routine is named PROGRAM # by default,) but does help you to recall the purpose of each routine.**
2. **Select Item 0, ACQUIRE KEYSTROKES, from the USER DEF PROGRAM UTILITIES. This begins the accumulation of keystrokes. The spectral display reappears with the routine name and this message:**

ACQUIRE KEY STROKES 0 BYTES

Each key that is pressed is now recorded in the order in which it was pressed. This sequence of key strokes constitutes most of the user-defined routines. The function of that key is also carried out as you watch. You can return to the USER DEF PROGRAM UTILITIES at any time by pressing [USER DEF].

3. **Press [UTIL] [1] [5] [W] to recall the stored settings.**
4. **Press [DSPL] [1] [7] [2] [0] [W]. This sets the ensemble size to 20.**
5. **Toggle [8] until line 8 of the menu reads:**

SAVE RESULTS IN DISPLAY A

This places the average in the A register.

6. Press [6]. This selects the MAX/MIN average.
7. Press [DSPL] [USER DEF] [3] [W]. This returns to the USER DEF PROGRAM UTILITIES and enters DISPLAY MESSAGE edit mode. The message can be up to 32 characters long. The message remains on screen until deleted. Enter the message:

20 MAX/MIN AVG

Remember to press [X] to store the message.

8. Press [USER DEF] [DSPL] [1] [1] to start the average.
9. After the average is complete, press [B] [DSPL] [2]. This turns on the B,C MINUS A in register B.
10. Press [D] [A]. This turns off the A and D registers.
11. Press [USER DEF] [3] [W] [Y] to delete the old message.
12. Press [3] [W] to enter the DISPLAY MESSAGE mode again. Enter the message:

WHEN AVG IS DONE

and terminate with [X].

13. Press [4] to select PAUSE FOR "USER DEF" KEY. This creates a PRESS "USER DEF" TO CONTINUE message on screen when your routine executes and halts the routine until you press [USER DEF].
14. Press [USER DEF] [3] [W] [Y] to delete the old message.
15. Press [USER DEF] [INPUT] [9] to turn on the calibrator.
16. Press [USER DEF] and select Item 2, WAIT FOR END OF SWEEP. This message instructs the instrument to wait for the completion of the current sweep and all end-of-sweep processing before proceeding with further instructions. The instrument also displays this message:

WAIT FOR END OF SWEEP

when the routine executes until the processing completes.

This delay guarantees the calibrator has time to turn on before the following Center Measure operation (step 17) is carried out.

If the display line/limit detector feature is active, it converts the WAIT FOR END OF SWEEP message to WAIT FOR LIMIT. This halts the execution of the user-defined routine until the alarm condition has been satisfied. You could then use [SAVE] [register] to store the alarming signal, or readout its amplitude using the marker.

17. Press [CTR-MEAS/TRKG]. This will center and count (if Option 02 is present) the calibrator signal.
18. Press [USER DEF] and select Item 2, WAIT FOR END OF SWEEP. Features like Center Measure require the delay this instruction yields to prevent parameters from changing before the count is completed.
19. Press [USER DEF] [6] [3]. This stores the routine in location 3. You cannot store a routine in a location in which another is already stored. You must first delete the prior routine.
20. To prevent your routine from accidental erasure, press [USER DEF] [9] and select Item 8, PROTECT, and then press [3]. Select Item 7, DELETE, and notice the # next to your routine indicating that it is protected. Press [3] [W]. The message:

REMOVE PROTECTION FIRST

appears. To remove the protection, press [BKSP]/ [8] [3]. You can now delete the routine if you wish.

Normally, there is no need to repeat this measurement. Doing it once determines how much the amplitude of the calibration signal is above the average noise passing through the 5 MHz resolution bandwidth filter. However, in the case of other routines it may be desirable to have the routine repeat indefinitely. For instance, you might determine the frequency and amplitude of a series of oscillators. Here is the general approach for creating a UDP for this measurement:

1. Do any titling or message generation.

2. Use a **PAUSE FOR "USER DEF" KEY** command. When the routine is actually running, you attach the external oscillator and press [USER DEF] to continue.
3. Perform a **Center Measure** to determine the frequency and amplitude of the oscillator signal.
4. Use a **WAIT FOR END OF SWEEP** command to allow the measurement to be carried out.
5. Send the result to a printer, if desired (requires Option 03 or 08).
6. Select item 5, **CONTINUOUS EXECUTION**, from the **USER DEF PROGRAM UTILITIES**. The status indicator at the end of the line will change from OFF to ON. This causes the routine to repeat indefinitely.
7. Store the routine and protect it, if desired.

Before executing any user-defined routine, it is a good practice to reinitialize the instrument and clear all registers.

To start a routine, press:

[USER DEF]

and select the number of the routine you want to run. The routine begins to execute immediately.

While the routine is running, its title is displayed beneath the left on-screen readout column. If your routine includes a **DISPLAY MESSAGE**, it is displayed beneath the title. Error and progress messages are also displayed under the right-hand readouts. You may interrupt any routine by pressing [USER DEF] (except when **PRESS "USER DEF" TO CONTINUE** is displayed). A continuously executing routine will continue to run until you press [USER DEF].

Section 7 — External I/O

Replace this page with the tab divider of the same name.

SECTION 7

EXTERNAL INPUT AND OUTPUT

The rear panel contains several input/output (I/O) connectors. One or more of those described in this section may not be used on your instrument, depending upon which options are installed.

NOTE

*During this section, perform the operations that are highlighted with **bold text**.*

Any control settings can be used for these exercises.

MAINS POWER

For safety, be sure to use a 3-wire AC power cord and be certain the ground conductor is properly connected. Adjacent to the power receptacle is the mains fuse; its size is marked. If the fuse repeatedly blows, it is likely you have a hardware problem. Contact your local Tektronix Field Office or representative.

J101 – TV SIDEBAND ANALYZER INTERFACE

This jack provides the 2711's first local oscillator signal to the Tektronix 1405 TV Sideband Analyzer. The jack is provided as part of Option 15. The 1405 is designed specifically for testing video modulators, transmitters, and CATV headends. It provides standard video signals to the input of the modulator, whose output is quickly and accurately measured using the 2711. Simply insert an SMA-to-SMA connecting cable between the LO IN jack on the back of the 1405 and J101 on the back of the Spectrum Analyzer. You can also superimpose frequency markers generated by the 1405 on the sweep produced by the 2711. The markers consist of variable width "dips" in the Spectrum Analyzer sweep, and are in addition to the intensified frequency markers internally generated by the 2711. To superimpose the markers, connect the Z AXIS OUT signal from the 1405 to the 2711's external video input (pin 1

of accessory connector J103). Use pin 2 of J103 for signal ground. Turn the markers on or off from the 1405's front panel, and control their width and depth using the 1405's WIDTH and INTEN controls. Consult the *1405 Operators Manual* or *Antenna To Tap...No Loose Ends*, Tektronix publication 26W-7043, for instructions on making measurements with the 1405/271x combination (treat the 2711 as though it is a 2710).

J102 – EXTERNAL TRIGGER

This BNC input, rear panel connector located is labelled J102 and EXT TRIG. The shell of the connector is at chassis ground. When using an external trigger signal (see *SWP/TRIG* in section 6), use this connector to apply the trigger signal. Trigger signals must be positive-going and rise above 100 mV for at least 0.1 microsecond.



To avoid damaging the 2711, combined AC plus DC trigger signal levels must not exceed 50 volts peak.

An external trigger signal starts a new sweep each time it rises above a threshold established by the setting of the LEVEL control, providing the previous sweep is completed and item 2, EXTERNAL, is selected from the SWP/TRIG Menu.

A typical external trigger signal might be a +5 volt pulse signifying that a transmitter has been keyed on. For instance, to determine the spectrum of a gated CW signal, you could apply the gated CW to the 2711 input while triggering the 2711 externally with the gating signal. The analyzer would then perform a spectral sweep only when the CW signal was present at its input.

To trigger the 2711 externally, connect the external trigger signal to the EXT TRIG Jack and press [SWP/TRIG] [2]. Turn the LEVEL control fully counterclockwise and then rotate it slowly clockwise until a sweep occurs. If the external trigger is pulsing, the analyzer sweep should now remain in synchronism with it (if not, you may have to adjust the LEVEL control slightly).

When you are finished, press [SWP/TRIG] [0] to select FREE RUN trigger mode.

J103 – ACCESSORY CONNECTOR

The accessory jack, J103, is a 9-pin "D" connector, but it is not RS-232C compatible. Instead, it provides an interface for video I/O and the analyzer's sweep gate and sweep ramp signals. Terminations are shown in Figure 7-1, and a discussion of each signal follows.

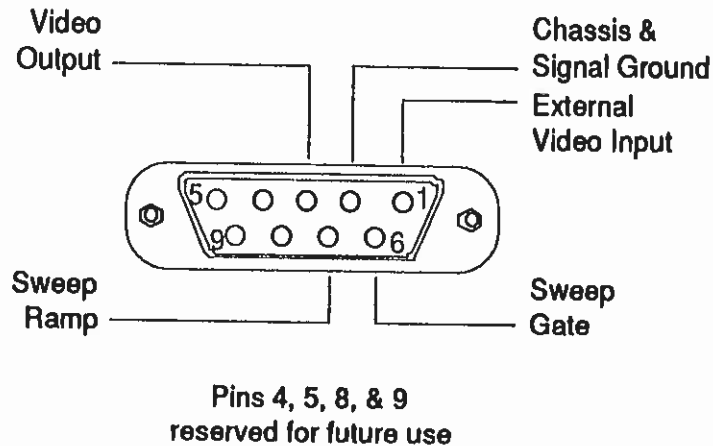


Figure 7-1. Accessory connector (J103).

100.0MHZ	(AUTO SWEEP)	ATTN 10DB
-20.0DBM		VF WIDE
20.0MHZ/		10 DB/
5MHZ RBW (AUTO)	CALIBRATOR	

Pin 1 – External Video Input

Pin 1 enables you to introduce an external "video" signal to the analyzer, giving it limited oscilloscope capabilities. It is also used to introduce the frequency markers from the 1405 TV Sideband Analyzer (see the discussion of J101).

The "video" signal, in this case, can be any signal limited to a 0 to 50 kHz band and an amplitude range of 0 to +1.4 volts. The analyzer preamplifier, RF attenuator, mixer, resolution bandwidth

filter, and log amplifier circuits are bypassed; the sweep and vertical scale facilities are utilized.

In addition, the 2711's digital storage remains active. This means you can use the spectrum analyzer to store images of external signals for comparison purposes, or compile statistical estimates of their parameters using ensemble averaging.

To experiment, you need a signal meeting the external input amplitude and frequency limits; various signal generators may be used.

Connect the signal source to pin 1 of the accessory connector and its ground lead to pin 2. Press [DSPL] and toggle item 7, DISPLAY SOURCE, to EXTERNAL.

The instrument reverts to display mode in zero span (there is no need to sweep the signal past the resolution bandwidth filter since these circuits are bypassed). The top graticule line is 0 volts. In this mode, the only meaningful information in the left on-screen readout is the sweep speed. The sweep speed is initially the rate which was in effect before you switched to EXTERNAL source, in this case, 50 milliseconds/division. In the right column only the bottom line

EXT 175MV/

is meaningful, telling you that the external (EXT) input is being used with a vertical scale factor of 175 millivolt/division.

Press [10/5/1] three times and notice that the scale changes to 87.5MV/, 17.5MV/, and back to 175MV/. Press the [A], [B], [C], and [D] keys to turn off all registers to view the analog signal, and then press [D] to turn the D register back on.

The VERT SCALE and DISPLAY STORAGE function blocks remain operational. You can alter the display scaling, view analog or digital signals, compile ensemble statistics, or select other items from the DSPL Menu.

Pin 2 – Chassis and Signal Ground

Pin 2 of the accessory connector is chassis and signal ground.

100.0MHZ	(AUTO SWEEP)	ATTN 10DB
-20.0DBM		VF WIDE
20.0MHZ/		10 DB/
5MHZ RBW (AUTO)	CALIBRATOR	

Pin 3 – Video Output

Pin 3 of the accessory connector is the analog video output from the 2711. The analog video output is a 0 to +1.6 volt signal representing the vertical deflection of the display you see on the analyzer with all registers turned off. 0 volts is the top graticule line and +1.6 volts is the bottom line. The output signal range remains constant regardless of analyzer reference level, attenuation, and vertical scale. The signal can be used to drive an external oscilloscope or other video display unit.

Connect pin 3 to an input channel of an oscilloscope. At the oscilloscope, select 0.2 volt/division and 50 millisecond/division scale factors; invert the input and trigger internally. You may have trouble triggering because of the multiple signal peaks and blanking period of the video signal, but you should see a spectrum on the oscilloscope similar to the one on the 2711. If not, adjust your oscilloscope trigger and vertical position controls. You will learn how to overcome this problem in the next paragraph.

Pin 6 – Sweep Gate

Pin 6 of the accessory connector contains the sweep gate. The sweep gate is a +5 volt pulse whose leading edge is synchronous with the start of the 2711's sweep. The trailing edge marks the end of sweep (Figure 7-2). The signal is usually used in conjunction with the video output to indicate when a new sweep is beginning.

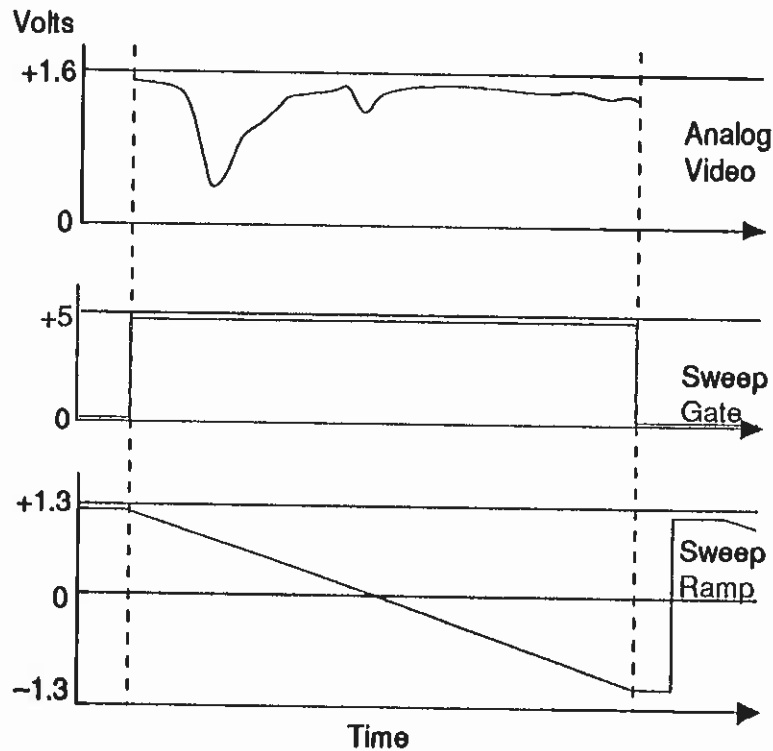


Figure 7-2. Sweep gate and ramp timing.

Continuing with the setup from the Video Output paragraph, connect pin 6 to the external trigger input of your oscilloscope and select the external trigger mode, positive slope. Adjust the oscilloscope trigger level control until the spectral display locks in place. Now press [A], [B], [C], and [D] to turn off all the digital storage registers. Compare the spectrum analyzer and oscilloscope displays.

Now the oscilloscope display triggering should be greatly improved. This can be especially important when you are trying to view time-varying analog spectra.

Press [MAX HOLD A&B] [A] to turn on MAX HOLD in register A — In fact, turn on all the registers (press [B], [C], and [D]). Notice the analog trace is still displayed on the oscilloscope.

By using the video output to view the analog display, all four registers remain available for digital storage and display; you can have an analog display and four (different) digital traces.

If your oscilloscope has a sweep magnifier or delayed sweep mode, you may use either to obtain an enhanced view of the central signal peak on the oscilloscope without altering the spectrum analyzer settings. The oscilloscope horizontal scale factor equals the 2711 span/division times the ratio of the analyzer and oscilloscope sweep speeds.

Pin 7 – Sweep Ramp

Pin 7 of the accessory connector is the sweep ramp. The sweep ramp varies linearly from +1.3 to -1.3 volts (Figure 7-2), and is proportional to the horizontal position of the sweep as it crosses the screen. The start of the ramp is synchronous with the start of the trace; the bottom of the ramp marks the end of sweep. The signal is usually used in conjunction with the video output to generate the horizontal deflection for an external video unit such as an XY oscilloscope or recorder.

Continuing with the setup from the Sweep Gate paragraph, connect pin 7 to the X-axis Input of your oscilloscope and the video output to the Y-axis. Place the oscilloscope in XY mode. Adjust the X-axis gain on the oscilloscope until the sweep just fills the screen. If the sweep is backwards, invert the X-axis Input.

The advantage in using the ramp to control the oscilloscope is that there is no difference in the time bases used by the 2711 and the oscilloscope. The disadvantage is that you cannot control the oscilloscope time base independently of the analyzer.

J104 – DIGITAL COMMUNICATIONS PORT

The 2711 may be equipped with an optional digital communications connector labeled J104. The type of connector on your instrument depends on the communications option selected when the analyzer was purchased. If the Option 03 GPIB port was chosen, J104 is a 24-pin IEEE Standard 488 GPIB connector. If the Option 08 RS-232 port was chosen, J104 is a 9-pin male "D" connector with terminations conforming to EIA Standard RS-232-C.

The connector pin-outs are shown in Figures 7-3 and 7-4. Signal levels, handshaking, protocols, and other matters of importance to digital communications are detailed in the **2711 Programmer Manual**.

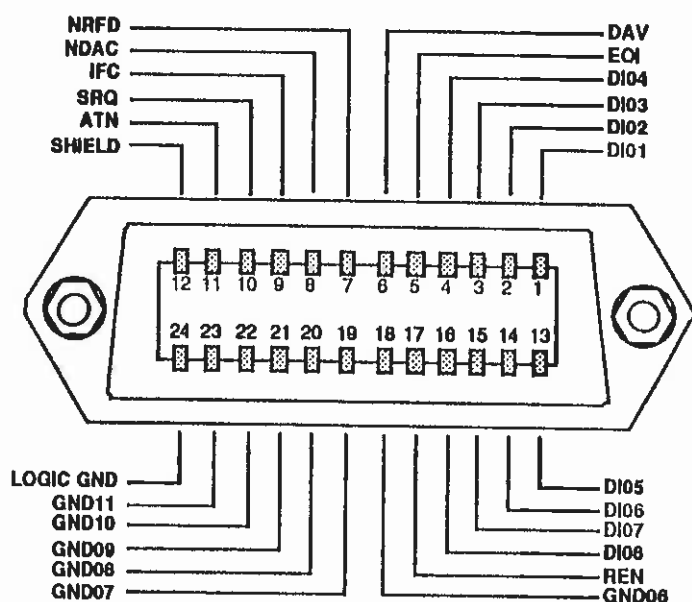


Figure 7-3. IEEE Standard 488 (GPIB) connector pin assignments.

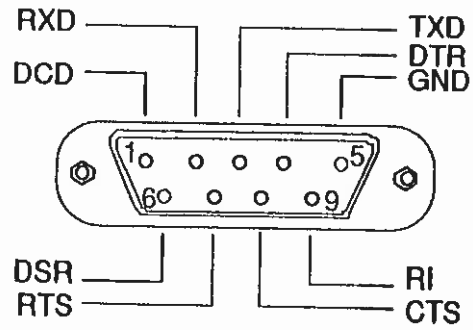


Figure 7-4. EIA Standard RS-232 (C) connector pin assignments.

Appendices

Replace this page with the tab divider of the same name.

APPENDIX A

BROADCAST AM, FM, AND TV SIGNAL SOURCES

CAUTION

Before connecting signal sources to the 2711, be certain the total signal strength is less than +20 dBm. If in doubt, check with a broadband RF wattmeter or voltmeter.

For some of the experiments in this manual, you need AM or FM modulated signals. The most readily available signals are AM and FM broadcasts. To receive AM or FM broadcast radio stations, you can plug a piece of wire directly into the center terminal of the input signal connector on the 2711 and direct the other end out a nearby window. If your building is not metal-framed, the wire probably does not need to be extended outside a window. The required length of wire will depend on the strength, location, and frequency of the transmitter among other variables. 50 kW FM stations 40 miles distant have been received with a wire paper clip, straightened and inserted directly into the input connector — the 2711 is very sensitive.

TV stations and FM broadcasts can also be received on a standard television antenna or other suitable RF antenna. Before connecting any wire or antenna to the analyzer, ensure there is no static charge on it by momentarily grounding it to the input connector shell. If you are uncertain, use a voltmeter to confirm there are no high-level signals superimposed on the antenna system (such as from a nearby, high-power broadcasting station). Maximum total input to the 2711 must not exceed +20 dBm.

If cable TV is available in your facility, it provides an ideal source of FM and TV signals. Using appropriate connectors, you can plug the cable directly into the analyzer.

APPENDIX B

SYSTEM MESSAGES

The 2711 will display messages when:

- Self-check routines built into the 2711 detect abnormalities
- Incorrect information is entered
- An improper operation is attempted
- It is necessary to alert you to an operation in progress

The messages which you may encounter are contained in the following list. Their causes and corrections are indicated immediately below the message. If you are unable to correct an abnormal situation, contact your local Tektronix Service Center and report the message.

1ST MEASUREMENT COMPLETE

Go to the next step in the procedure.

ADDITIONAL NVRAM NOT INSTALLED

Occurs when accessing a file located in extended NVRAM if the 2711 cannot detect the presence of the extended NVRAM.

AMPL NORM SUGGESTED (VR PIN DAC)

Perform amplitude normalization. Consult service center if message persists.

AMPL OUT OF RANGE (NORMALIZATIONS)

Perform amplitude normalization again. If message persists, consult service center.

AMPLITUDE NORMALIZATION FAILED

Perform amplitude normalization again. If message persists, consult service center.

AMPLITUDE OUT OF CALIBRATION

The analyzer amplitude may be out of calibration. This message may be generated by the auto sweep rate measurement routine.

AVERAGE NOISE TOO LOW

The average noise level in the Carrier-to-Noise or Noise Normalization measurement is below the bottom of the screen and cannot be digitized. To correct the problem, reduce the reference level to bring the noise level onto the screen.

AVERAGE IN PROCESS

An ensemble average (not CONTINUOUS) is in process. Used to report event over GPIB.

CALIBRATOR DOESN'T MATCH READOUT

The calibrator is enabled and an external attenuation or external frequency offset is enabled.

CAN'T COUNT WITH CORRECTIONS OFF

Turn Frequency Corrections ON. The location of this selection is [UTIL] [4] [3].

CANNOT CALC. VERT. SENSITIVITY

Perform amplitude normalization. Consult service center if message persists.

CANNOT COUNT (VCO IF)

Perform frequency normalization. If message persists, consult service center. Either the VCO counter input or the IF counter input failure can cause this error to occur.

CANNOT COUNT BEAT FREQUENCY

Perform frequency normalization. If message persists, consult service center.

CANNOT DELETE FILE WHILE IN USE

Occurs when attempting to delete a file that is in use.

CANNOT NORMALIZE PLL VCO

Perform frequency normalization. Consult service center if message persists.

CANNOT OVERWRITE SAVED DISPLAY

Old data must be deleted or transferred to STORED SETTINGS before new data can be saved.

CANNOT OVERWRITE STORED WAVEFORM

A waveform is already stored in this register. Old waveform(s) must be deleted first.

CANNOT OVERWRITE STORED SETTING

An instrument setting is already stored in this register. Old setting must be deleted first.

CANNOT STORE - NV MEMORY FULL

Must delete other settings if further storage is desired.

CNTR SIGNAL OUT OF IF PASSBAND

The signal in zero span is not above the threshold. Perform CTR MEAS again or use a wider resolution bandwidth filter. Performing a frequency normalization may also facilitate a count. Because of span and display storage inaccuracies, the signal may not be exactly centered in the digital display.

COMM PORT NOT INSTALLED

2711 cannot detect the presence of the communications port.

COMMAND NOT IMPLEMENTED

Feature not installed on this instrument.

COUNTER FREQUENCY UNSTABLE

Perform normalizations again. If message continues to repeat, consult service center. Frequency counter or input to it is unreliable.

COUNTER NOT INSTALLED

2711 cannot detect the presence of the counter.

DATA ERROR IN FILE

Firmware/Hardware error. Consult service center if message continues to repeat.

DBUV/M MEASUREMENT MODE IDLE

Destination waveform for DBUV/M is not being displayed and the correction calculation is disabled. The mode can be restarted by turning on the destination waveform register.

DEFAULT DATA LOADED

Since a file could not be read to load a data structure, the default values were loaded into the file and into the data structure.

DELETE EDITING BUFFER FIRST

The editing buffer must be deleted before the desired function or entry can be accomplished.

DELETE EXISTING PROGRAM FIRST

A user defined program already exists in this register. It must be deleted before the new one can be stored.

DELETE EXISTING TABLE FIRST

Attempt was made to store an antenna correction factor table in a file position which is already used. You must delete the file via the table deletion menu prior to attempting to store of the new file.

DESTINATION WAVEFORM CONFLICT

Attempt was made to enable two functions that use the same destination waveform. The display line, ensemble average, min hold, dBmV/M and waterfall mode use destination waveforms.

DIRECTORY ERROR IN FILE

Firmware/Hardware error. Consult service center if message continues to repeat.

DISCONNECT INPUT SIGNAL

Input signal needs to be removed in following step.

DISPLAY LINE OFF SCREEN

The display line is out of range either at the top or bottom of the CRT display.

EDITING BUFFER IS EMPTY

The local editing buffer for either the UDP or antenna tables is empty. Select Acquire Keystrokes in the User Def Program Utilities menu to begin acquisition. Select Begin Edit in the Edit Antenna Table menu to begin acquisition. If deletion of the editing buffer is being attempted, the error message is simply to inform the user that the selected action is invalid.

END OF FILE

Firmware/Hardware error. Consult service center if message continues to repeat.

ENSEMBLE AVERAGE COMPLETE

Signifies completion of an ensemble average process.

ERROR

Firmware error. Consult service center if message persists.

FATAL ERROR IN FILE

Firmware/Hardware error. Consult service center if message continues to repeat.

FILE NOT FOUND

Occurs when attempting to access a file that does not exist.

FILE SIZE ERROR

Occurs when attempting to create a new file in NVRAM and the size of the new file is not the same as the size of the existing file. The most probable cause is that there is a version mismatch between the file system and the current firmware.

FILE SYSTEM DIRECTORY FULL

Occurs when attempting to store a file in the NVRAM and there are no more directory entries available.

FILE SYSTEM FULL

Occurs when attempting to store a file in the NVRAM there is no more room to store the file.

FIRST STEP MUST BE DONE FIRST

Preceding step must be performed prior to selected one. Part of the reference normalizations are order-dependent.

FORMATTING PLOT

Downloading plot file to hard copy device.

FREQ OUT OF RANGE (NORMALIZATIONS)

Perform frequency normalization again. If message persists, consult service center.

FREQ NORM SUGGESTED (1ST LO)

Perform frequency normalization. If message persists, consult service center.

FREQ NORM SUGGESTED (FIND SIDE)

Perform frequency normalization. If message persists, consult service center.

FREQ NORM SUGGESTED (INNER PLL)

Perform frequency normalization. If message persists, consult service center.

FREQ NORM SUGGESTED (SET BEAT)

Perform frequency normalization. If message persists, consult service center.

FREQ NORM SUGGESTED (SET VCO)

Perform frequency normalization. If message persists, consult service center.

FREQ NORM SUGGESTED (SPAN DAC)

Perform frequency normalization. If message persists, consult service center.

FREQUENCY NORMALIZATION FAILED

Perform frequency normalization again. If message persists, consult service center.

FUNC NOT AVAIL IN DBUV/M MODE

Selected function is not available with the dBuV/m measurement mode enabled. Functions not available include LIN vertical mode, FM and EXTERNAL display sources, and attempting to unsave (clear) the selected destination waveform. Choose new reference units to enable the selected operation.

FUNC NOT AVAIL IN CURRENT MODE

Consult manual for proper instrument settings. This error message may appear, for instance, upon the invocation of instrument functions such as carrier to noise, noise normalized bandwidth, and antenna correction factors while in linear scaling mode. In these particular cases the vertical scaling mode would have to be changed to logarithmic before invoking the functions. Another case would be the invocation of a user-defined routine while in the user defined routine acquisition mode. The acquisition mode must be exited before any routine can be activated.

FUNCTION NOT AVAIL. IN LIN MODE

Switch to LOG mode vertical scale to obtain proper functioning. This error message may appear upon the invocation of instrument functions such as carrier to noise, noise normalized bandwidth, and antenna correction factors.

FUNCTION NOT AVAIL IN MAX SPAN

Signal track mode incompatible with MAX SPAN. Try smaller span.

ILLEGAL COMMAND

Firmware error. Consult service center if message persists.

ILLEGAL PARAMETER PASSED (NEW)

ILLEGAL PARAMETER ENTERED (OLD)

Firmware error. Consult service center if message persists.

ILLEGAL START/STOP/INC VALUES

Illegal Start, Stop, or Increment values are present for the antenna correction factor table the user is attempting to edit. Either the initial non-usable values are present (the user has not attempted to enter his own values) or the values entered have some inconsistency such as the start value being greater than the stop value.

INACTIVE MARKER OFF SCREEN

The frequency value of the inactive marker has been retained. The marker itself is not visible being out of the range of the display.

INSUFFICIENT MEMORY AVAILABLE

Not enough memory (NVRAM) is available for the operation.

INTERNAL REF AMPL TOO INACCURATE

Perform reference amplitude normalization again checking for the presence of the correct external reference frequency and amplitude. If message persists, consult service center.

INTERNAL REF FREQ TOO INACCURATE

Perform reference frequency normalization again checking for the presence of the correct external reference frequency and its correct entry from the keypad. If message persists, consult service center.

INTERRUPT FAULT AT FF

Firmware/Hardware error. Consult service center if message persists.

INTERRUPT FAULT

Firmware/Hardware error. Consult service center if message persists.

INVALID DEVICE NUMBER

Firmware/Hardware error. Consult service center if message continues to repeat.

INVALID FILE NUMBER

Firmware/Hardware error. Consult service center if message continues to repeat.

LAST PWR DOWN REG CHECKSUM ERR

Last power down settings bad. Defaults used. Consult service center if problem recurs.

MALLOC: RAN OUT OF MEMORY

Memory allocation firmware/hardware error. Consult service center if message persists.

MARKERS ARE OFF

Marker(s) must be turned on to obtain desired function.

MARKER WOULD OVERWRITE NOISE VALUE

Enabling the marker would overwrite the saved Carrier-to-Noise or Normalized Noise value. Markers cannot be placed on a display saved with Carrier-to-Noise or Noise Norm'd modes enabled.

MUST BE IN DELTA MARKER MODE

Turn on Delta Markers to obtain desired function.

NO LISTENER

A screen plot front-panel operation was attempted to the GPIB port but no listen-addressed devices were available. Place a listen-addressed device on the bus and repeat the operation.

NO MODULATION ON SIGNAL

Occurs in zero span when CTR MEAS is attempted and there is no constant frequency modulation on the carrier.

NO SIGNAL (NORMALIZATIONS)

Perform normalizations again. If message persists, consult service center.

NO SIGNAL FOUND ABOVE THRESHOLD

There is no displayed signal exceeding the marker threshold value. Threshold can be reset using the MKR/FREQ Menu.

NO SIGNAL AT CENTER OF DISPLAY

Firmware/Hardware error. Consult service center if message continues to repeat.

NO SIGNAL AT COUNTER INPUT

Perform normalizations again. If message continues to repeat, consult service center.

NOISE LEVEL LESS THAN 2DB

Measured system noise level is less than 2 dB above the 2711 noise floor. Noise power correction has been made by NOISE NORM'D or C/N mode algorithms in the 2711.

NON-COMPATIBLE NVM FORMAT

The firmware version was not compatible with the non-volatile memory. Consequently the NVM was reinitialized. Consult service center if message continues to repeat.

NONE OF THE TRACES ARE ACTIVE

A digitized waveform must be on to employ desired function.

NORMALIZATION COMPLETE

Normalization routine successfully finished.

NORMALIZATION SUGGESTED

Frequency normalization needed. If message persists, consult service center.

NORMALIZED RESULT OUT OF RANGE

Perform normalizations again. If message persists, consult service center.

NORMALIZING

Normalization routine running.

NOT AVAILABLE WITH DBUV/M IDLE.

The selected function is not available with DBUV/M mode idled. Select new reference unit to enable operation.

NOT AVAIL IN SHORT HOLDOFF MODE

Certain functions that require end of sweep processing are not available when in the 'Short Holdoff' mode.

NOT AVAIL IN WATERFALL MODE

The selected function is not available in waterfall mode.

NOT AVAIL W/ DISPLAY STORAGE ON

Function not compatible with digital display. Use analog display.

NOT INSTALLED

Feature not installed on this instrument.

NVM CHECKSUM ERROR

Non-Volatile Memory has been corrupted and consequently re-initialized. Consult service center if message continues to repeat.

NVM FRAGMENTATION ERR

Firmware/Hardware error. Consult service center if message persists.

NVM SEGMENTATION ERROR

Firmware/Hardware error. Consult service center if message persists.

NVM VERSION MIS-MATCH

Firmware/Hardware error. Consult service center if message continues to repeat.

ONLY WAVEFORMS DELETED

When settings you are attempting to delete are protected, only the saved waveforms are deleted.

ONLY WAVEFORMS SAVED

When saving settings in a location containing previously protected settings, only the waveforms are saved.

OUT OF RANGE

A value has been entered that is outside the permitted range. The Instrument will default to the closest permissible value. If the message appears at times other than data entry a firmware/hardware error is probable. Consult the service center if message persists.

PLOT ABORTED

New plot request has caused currently running plot to be aborted. New plot must be requested again in order to restart plot process and obtain new plot.

PLOT COMPLETE

A plot operation has been finished.

PLOT IN PROCESS

Signifies (for GPIB reporting) that a plot is in progress.

POLYNOMIAL HAS NO SOLUTION

Firmware/Hardware error. Consult service center if message continues to repeat.

PORT OFFLINE

Select ONLINE in proper port configuration sub-menu.

PRINTER ERROR

Check the printer. Some printers return Printer Error for all conditions which need attention (offline, out of paper, etc.); consult the printer manual.

PRINTER IS NOT CONNECTED

Connect printer to appropriate port. Check printer cable.

PRINTER OUT OF PAPER

Reload printer paper.

PROGRAM NOT EXECUTABLE

The selected user-defined program is corrupted or too big to fit into available internal memory. Delete and save the affected program again.

PROTECTED FILE

Occurs when attempting to delete a file that is protected.

QUERY NOT AVAILABLE

Query attempted on function for which there is no query response.

REAL TIME CLOCK HW FAILURE

Firmware/Hardware error. Consult service center if message persists.

REAL TIME CLOCK NOT INSTALLED

2711 cannot detect presence of real-time clock.

REFERENCE LEVEL HAS NEW RANGE LIMITS

The reference level range limits have changed because the preamp or external atten/ampl mode is activated. The reference level itself does not change.

REFERENCE NORMALIZATION FAILED

Perform the reference normalization again checking for the presence of the correct external reference frequency and its correct entry from the keypad if required. If message persists, consult service center.

REGISTER VALUE NOT ALLOWED

A storage register value was utilized which is not legal for the requested function. For example, the register value 1 was used with the GPIB command STORe. This attempts to store settings in the factory default power-up register, a reserved register.

REMOVE PROTECTION FIRST

The selected user-defined program cannot be deleted until its file protection is removed.

RUNTASK: CANNOT START PROCESS

Firmware error. Consult service center if message persists.

SATELLITE VIDEO MNTR NOT INSTLD

2711 cannot sense presence of optional satellite (FM) video detector.

SEARCH TERMINATED, MAX SIGNALS

Signal search is terminated if it detects more than 50 signals.

SELECT TALK ONLY MODE FIRST

Screen plot front-panel operation requires the GPIB address mode to be talk only when the plot port is set to GPIB.

SELECTED PROGRAM IS EMPTY

The selected user defined program is empty. No action is taken.

SELECTED STORED SETTING IS EMPTY

Setting must be stored before it can be recalled.

SELECTED TABLE IS EMPTY

The selected antenna correction factor table is empty.

SETTING CORRUPTED

Requested stored setting has been deleted because of a corrupted data value. Consult service center if message persists. This message may also occur in general instrument operation if Settings Verify of [UTIL] [5] [4] is turned ON. This selection checks all data transactions involving the instrument settings. No deletions occur in the general operation.

SHORT HOLDOFF MODE NOT INSTLD

2711 cannot detect presence of Short Holdoff feature.

SIGNAL CANNOT BE SET PROPERLY

Perform normalizations again. If message continues to repeat, consult service center.

SIGNAL OUT OF IF PASSBAND

Frequency to be counted is not within one resolution bandwidth of the center frequency. Repeat CTR MEAS or use a wider resolution bandwidth filter. Performing a frequency normalization may also facilitate a count. Because of span and display storage inaccuracies, the signal may not be exactly centered in the digital display.

The message may also be displayed in Signal Track mode with the Frequency Counter enabled when tracking a rapidly moving signal. Disabling the Frequency Counter may correct the problem. The instrument may also try to count random noise on the filter skirts resulting in this error message. Turning on the Video Filter or raising the Signal Threshold corrects the problem.

SIGNAL OVER RANGE

The signal peak is above the top of the CRT display. Lower the reference level.

SINGLE SWEEP ARMED

Instrument armed for single sweep.

SINGLE SWEEP MODE

Instrument in single sweep mode.

SINGLE SWEEP TRIGGER

Single sweep has been triggered.

SIGNAL SEARCH COMPLETE

Firmware routine finished.

SIGNAL SEARCH IN PROCESS

Firmware routine running.

STAND BY

Required delay in use of instrument until message disappears.

START FREQUENCY CHANGED

Change in stop frequency necessitated a change in start frequency.

STOP FREQUENCY CHANGED

Change in start frequency necessitated a change in stop frequency.

STORAGE REGISTER EMPTY

No data yet stored in the register accessed.

TABLE CURRENTLY IN USE

The table is currently in use but the user may still delete it if he wishes.

TABLE IS TOO LARGE TO EDIT

The current combination of start/stop/increment setup frequencies results in a correction table with too many elements.

TG NORM SUGGESTED

Tracking Generator normalization is needed for optimum accuracy. If message persists after normalization, contact service center.

TIMER INTERRUPT FAULT

Firmware/Hardware error. Consult service center if message persists. Possible malfunction of interrupt timer on processor board indicated.

TOO MANY FILES OPEN

Firmware/Hardware error. Consult service center if message continues to repeat. Indicates that the maximum number of files is already open. Cannot open any more files at this time.

TRACKING GENERATOR NOT INSTALLED

2711 cannot detect presence of optional tracking generator.

UNCAL

Indicates the 2711 is operating in an uncalibrated state. Occurs if:

- a. Sweep speed is too fast for a specified resolution BW, video filter, and span combination.
- b. One or more critical normalizations have not been completed successfully.

UNCAL OFF

A change-of-state indicator displayed briefly when an uncalibrated state has been corrected and exited.

UNCAL ON

A change-of-state indicator displayed briefly when an uncalibrated state has been entered.

UNDEFINED ERROR CODE

Firmware/Hardware error. Consult service center if message persists. Returned error code has overrun established limits.

UNDEFINED EVENT CODE

Firmware/Hardware error. Consult service center if message persists. Returned error code has overrun established limits.

USE ANTENNA SETUP MENU FIRST

The antenna start/stop/increment frequencies must be set prior to editing the correction table.

USER DEFINED PROGRAM IN PROCESS

A UDP is in progress. Reported primarily for GPIB purposes.

USER DEFINED PROGRAM COMPLETE

A UDP has finished.

USER REQUEST

A user request SRQ has been initiated.

VERT MODE/SCALE MISMATCH ON DIFF

B minus A function attempted with mixed vertical modes (LOG/LIN display, AM/FM demodulator) or mixed scales (10/5/1 dB/, 10/5/1 KHZ/, 17.5/87.5/175 MV/). Reset the vertical modes or scales to be consistent. Amplitude mode/scale choices are found in [UTIL] [2] [6] with scale choices also available from the front panel VERT SCALE function block. Demodulator choices are found in [DEMOD/TG] [1] and [DEMOD/TG] [2].

VIDEO MONITOR NOT INSTALLED

2711 cannot detect presence of optional video monitor.

WAIT ABORTED SWEEP NOT ARMED

Requested WAIT FOR END OF SWEEP was aborted immediately to avoid an endless wait loop. This error occurs if WAIT is requested while in single sweep mode with the sweep not armed.

WARNING: USING EMPTY ANT TABLE

The table called for is empty. The function is still being performed but with values of zero for each increment of the table.

ZERO SPAN ENTERED

Instrument is now in zero span.

APPENDIX C

GLOBAL RESETS

Settings on the 2711 Spectrum Analyzer can be reset in many ways. Some of Instrument settings are always reset, while others are never reset, and still others are reset only during certain cycles. This appendix includes a description of which settings are in each category, and when each category of settings is reset.

DEFINITIONS

These definitions are included to make the following explanations more clear:

Reset – To restore a setting to a previous state. This is what happens to the Center Frequency, for example, when power is removed and reapplied; the Center Frequency setting is RESET.

Reset Category – Each setting belongs to one RESET CATEGORY, such as Center Frequency belongs to the "fragile" reset category. Each category is described later in this appendix.

Reset Cycle – An operation which causes one of the reset categories to be operated upon.

Retain – The opposite of RESET. A setting is RETAINED for a particular RESET CYCLE if its value can be set to any allowable value and remains at that value after the RESET CYCLE completes.

RESET CYCLE DESCRIPTION

Following is a list of all the reset cycles possible in the 2711:

Power Down/Up Cycle

This cycle is invoked by powering the instrument down and back up again.

Initialize Instrument Settings Cycle

This cycle is invoked via [UTIL] [0].

Recall Last Power Down Cycle

This cycle is invoked via [UTIL] [1] [0].

Recall Factory Default Power-Up Cycle

This cycle is invoked via [UTIL] [1] [1].

Recall User Defined Power-Up Cycle

This cycle is invoked via [UTIL] [1] [2] [W].

Recall Numbered Settings Cycle

This cycle is invoked via [UTIL] [1] [xx] [W]. xx is one of a selection of stored settings designated by numerals 0 – 9 on four successive screens.

Power-Up Diag And Reboot Cycle

This cycle is invoked via [UTIL] [5] [0] [9].

RESET CATEGORIES

There are several distinct settings categories in the 2711:

Precious Settings

Precious settings are not reset by any reset cycle. The settings in this class can only be changed by manually setting each to its desired value. Settings in this category include:

Saved Waveforms, Plot Configuration (including Comm Port, Plot Language, and Plot Speed), GPIB or RS-232 configuration, Real-Time Clock configuration, Audio Alert setting, Settings Protect Mode, and Signal Search Parameters.

Mode-related Settings

These are settings which are reset during some cycles and retained for others. The settings are reset as follows:

- During an INITIALIZE INSTRUMENT SETTINGS cycle, reset to the values retained at the last physical power down.
- During a POWER DOWN/UP cycle, reset to the values retained at the last physical power down, unless a User-Defined Power-up exists. In that case, reset to those stores in the User-Defined Power-up setting.
- During a POWER-UP DIAG AND REBOOT cycle, reset the same as during a POWER DOWN/UP cycle, but instead of the values resetting to those retained at the last physical power down, they reset as if a physical power down had just occurred.
- During all other cycles, do not reset.

The mode-related settings include:

Utility Menu Items

Spectral Display in Menus

Marker/Freq Menu Items

Frequency Reference Mode (CENTER/START), Counter Resolution, Frequency Tuning Mode (AUTO and TABULAR only, others revert to AUTO), Entered Frequency Tuning Increment, Tabular Tuning Table, Frequency Offset, Frequency Offset Mode (ON/OFF)

Input Menu Items

Input Impedance, Reference Level Units, External Gain/Attenuation, External Gain/Attenuation Mode (ON/OFF), dB μ V/M Measurement Distance, dB μ V/M Antenna Table, dB μ V/M Target Waveform

Sweep/Trigger Menu Items

Video Sync Polarity, Video Line Triggering Mode (CONTINUOUS/KNOB/ENTERED), Video Line Triggering Standard (NTSC/SECAM/PAL/OPEN)

Display Menu Items

Ensemble Averaging Destination Waveform, MIN HOLD destination waveform, Ensemble Averaging Mode, Ensemble Averaging Number-of-sweeps, B,C Minus A Offset Mode, Display Acquisition Mode (PEAK/MAX-MIN), Display Line Value

Applications Menu Items

Bandwidth Display dBc Value, Occupied BW percent,
Carrier-to-noise Reference Bandwidth, Normalized Noise
Reference Bandwidth

Demod/TG Menu Items

Video Monitor Mode (BROADCAST/SATELLITE), Video
Monitor Sync Polarity, Video Monitor Video Polarity, all
tracking generator functions

Fragile Settings

Fragile settings are those which are reset during ANY reset cycle.
Any settings not covered by the previous categories are FRAGILE.
Resets occur as follows:

During POWER DOWN/UP, INITIALIZE INSTRUMENT
SETTINGS, and POWER-UP DIAG AND REBOOT cycles,
reset to user-defined power-up (if it exists). Otherwise,
reset to default values.

During RECALL LAST POWER DOWN cycle, reset to last
power-down settings.

During RECALL FACTORY DEFAULT POWER-UP, reset to
the factory default settings.

During RECALL USER DEFINED POWER-UP and RECALL
NUMBERED SETTINGS cycles, reset to the specified
settings storage register.

Normalization Values

The normalization values are modified by executing some or all of
the instrument's normalizations. These values are only lost in the
case of certain NVRAM failures. The values being used by the
2711 may be set to default values via the service menus. The
actual (most recently passed) normalization values are always
restored during the POWER DOWN/UP and the POWER-UP DIAG
AND REBOOT cycles. The other cycles do not affect the normal-
ization values.

APPENDIX D

ACCESSORIES AND OPTIONS

ACCESSORIES

The 2711 Spectrum Analyzer is shipped with the accessories listed in Table D-1. Additional optional accessories are listed in Table D-3. Optional AC power cords are also available to meet various international standards (see Table D-2).

Table D-1. Standard accessories.

Item	Tektronix P/N
User Manual	070-8500-00
Pocket Reference	070-8501-00
Programmer Manual (Options 03 & 08 Only)	070-8132-01
U.S. Power Cord (optional power cords are shown in Table D-2)	161-0104-00
Front Cover	200-2520-00
Adapter, 50 Ω N Male to BNC Female	103-0045-00

Table D-2. Optional power cords.

Option	Item	Tektronix P/N
A1	Universal Euro, 220 V/50 Hz at 16A	161-0104-06
A2	United Kingdom, 240 V/50 Hz at 13A	161-0104-07
A3	Australian, 240 V/50 Hz, at 10A	161-0104-05
A4	North American, 240 V/60 Hz, at 12A	161-0134-00
A5	Swiss, 220 V/50 Hz, at 6A	161-0167-00

Table D-3. Optional accessories.

Item	Tektronix P/N
Coaxial cable, 50 Ω BNC to BNC, 18 in	012-0076-00
Coaxial cable, 50 Ω BNC to BNC, 42 in	012-0057-01
Coaxial cable, 75 Ω BNC to BNC, 42 in	012-0074-00
Minimum Loss Attenuator, 50 Ω Type N Male to 75 Ω BNC Female	131-4199-00
Rain Cover	016-0848-00
Accessory Pouch	016-0677-03
Viewing Hood	016-0566-00
Carrying Strap	346-0199-00
Service Kit	606-0110-02
CRT Light Filter (clear)	337-2775-01
CRT Light Filter (gray)	337-2775-02
Camera C-5C, Option 02	C-5C, Opt. 02
K212 Portable Instrument Cart	K212
Service Manual	070-8130-01
Transit Case	016-0792-02

OPTIONS

This section describes the features of the options available for the 2711 Spectrum Analyzer. Options are usually factory installed, but field kits are available in some cases. Contact your local Tektronix Field Office or representative for additional information.

Option M1–Option M3 (Extended Service and Warranty Options)

There are three extended service and warranty options offered for the spectrum analyzer that go beyond the basic one-year coverage. Contact your local Tektronix Field Office or representative for details.

Option M1: Two routine calibrations to published specifications in years two and three, respectively, of warranty coverage, plus two years remedial service.

Option M2: Four years remedial service.

Option M3: Four routine calibrations to published specifications in years two, three, four, and five, respectively, of product ownership, plus four years of remedial service.

Option 02 (Frequency Counter)

Option 02 adds an internal frequency counter for precise frequency measurements with readout resolution selectable between 1 Hz and 1 kHz. The counter is automatically activated whenever the [CTR-MEAS/TRKG] key is pressed (see section 5 of this manual for details).

Option 03 (GPIB Communications Port)

Option 03 adds a GPIB parallel communications port, which conforms to the IEEE 488.1 - 1978 standard, and a Programmer Manual. The port is activated and configured via the UTIL Menu. The port connector is located on the rear panel of the 2711.

For programming instructions, see your **2711 Programmer Manual**. Connector terminations may be found in the **Programmer Manual** or in the **External Input and Output** section of this manual. To configure the GPIB port, see **System Configuration** in section 6 of this manual.

Option 04 (Tracking Generator)

Option 04 adds an internal Tracking Generator (TG) to the Spectrum Analyzer package. The Tracking Generator produces a variable amplitude sinusoidal signal. The frequency of the TG signal closely matches, or tracks, the frequency window of the Spectrum Analyzer. The TG is used most often to measure the frequency response of two-port devices.

See the **Using The Tracking Generator** in section 6 of this manual for operating instructions.

Option 07 (Low Cost Inverter/Battery Pack)

Option 07 supplies a Tektronix 2704 DC-to-AC Inverter, 2705 Battery Pack, Instruction Manual, and necessary mounting hardware. This option allows operation of the Spectrum Analyzer in locations where AC power is not available. The 2705 provides approximately one hour of operation when used with the 2704 Inverter and 2711 Spectrum Analyzer. Operating time can be extended by using additional 2705 Battery Packs, or alternate 12 VDC sources. The Inverter also contains a charger and an auxiliary 18 VDC output to power external devices such as Low Noise Block Down Converters (LNB) used in satellite downlink applications.

Option 08 (RS-232 Communications Port)

Option 08 adds an RS-232 serial communications port and a Programmer's Manual. This port conforms closely to the IEEE P1174.232 Draft Standard which defines the features and functions of the RS-232 interface as it applies to instrument systems. However, it does not necessarily comply with the three-level protocol presently proposed. The port is activated and configured via the UTIL Menu. The DB-9 port connector is located on the rear panel of the 2711.

For programming instructions, see your **2711 Programmer Manual**. Connector terminations may be found in the **Programmer Manual** or in the **External Input and Output** section of this manual. To configure the RS-232 port, see **System Configuration** in section 6 of this manual.

Option 10 (Video Monitor)

Option 10 provides raster-scan video monitor capabilities. The video signal must conform to a recognized standard (NTSC, PAL, or SECAM). The monitor will not descramble suppressed sync or otherwise scrambled signals. See **Video Demodulation** in section 6.

Option 15 (TV Sideband Analyzer Interface)

Option 15 provides an interface for the Tektronix 1405 TV Sideband Analyzer. The 1st L.O. is buffered, routed to J101 on the 2711 rear panel, and terminated in 50 Ω . The 2711/1405 combination enables you to quickly and conveniently measure TV modulator/transmitter frequency responses.

Option 30 (Rackmount Adapter)

Option 30 provides the hardware for installing the 2711 Spectrum Analyzer in a standard 19-inch (483 mm) rack. The rackmount adapter requires minimum vertical space of 5.25 inches (133 mm). An alternate cradle-mount adapter is also available — see Option 34. The Spectrum Analyzer meets all electrical and environmental specifications when it is mounted according to the procedures accompanying Option 30.

Option 33 (Travel Line)

Option 33 provides a Travel Line package including a rain cover, accessory pouch, gray CRT filter, and carrying strap.

Option 34 (Cradle Type Rackmount Adapter)

Option 34 consists of a front panel mask and rack mounted cradle which adapts the 2711 to a standard 19 inch (483 mm) rack. The adapter requires 7 inches (178 mm) of vertical rack space. Installation instructions accompany Option 34.

This option preserves the portability of the analyzer. Slide assemblies are provided for front access to, and easy removal of, the analyzer.

INDEX

[10/5/1]	4-10, 5-15		
2711	1-6		
75 ohm source	6-8		
A		B	
[A], [B], [C], [D]	5-21	back panel	4-14
About The 2711	1-6	backspace key (BKSP)	4-8, 6-4
AC Power Source	x	bandwidth, occupied	6-59
accessories	D-1	baud rate, RS-232	6-90
accessory connector	7-3	bold text	1-3
Accommodating a 75 Ohm Source	6-8	box, settings	1-2
Accommodating External Amplification/Attenuation	6-7	brackets, square	1-3
ACQUIRE KEY STROKES	6-114	brightness	5-37
activating registers	5-21	BROADCAST (AM) VIDEO	6-67
Adjusting the Tracking	6-74	built-in calibrator	3-12
Aligning the Display	6-101		
alignment, trace	5-37	C	
AM DEMODULATOR	6-66	cable TV signal	A-1
AM VOL	4-11	calibrator	3-12
AM/FM signal source	A-1	CAUTION	ix
amplification/attenuation		center measure	5-31
external	6-7	changing frequency	3-19
amplitude normalization	6-86	changing parameters	6-2
amplitude related characteristics	2-5	Changing Reference Level	
amplitude scale	5-15	Units	6-7
amplitude, tracking generator	6-73	chassis/signal ground	7-5
antenna correction factors	6-19	checkout	3-4
antenna table	6-19	comm port, configuring	6-88
antennas	A-1	communications connector	7-8
Applications (APPL)		Configuring the	
Menu	4-22, 6-51	Communications Port	6-88
arrow keys	3-10, 4-13	connector, accessory	7-3
AUDIO ALERT	6-93	connector, communications	7-8
[AUTO], RES BW	4-13, 5-13	connectors	4-3, 4-14
[AUTO], SWEEP	4-13, 5-18	contrast-enhancing filter	5-37
		Control Panel Basics	3-10
		control	
		frequency	5-5
		marker	5-28
		reference level	5-7

control (continued)		DISPLAY MESSAGE	6-115
register	5-21	display register control	4-9
resolution BW	5-10	display screen, description	4-1
span per division	5-2	display storage	4-9, 5-21
sweep rate	5-16	display storage function block	4-9
vertical scale	5-15	display, aligning	6-101
controlling readouts	5-36	display, max/min	3-9
controls		display, waterfall	5-25
dedicated	5-1	dot key (.)	4-8
fundamental	4-6, 5-1		
overview	4-3		
software	6-1	E	
conventions, typographical	1-3		
cooling	xii, 3-2	EDITING BUFFER	6-19
corrections, frequency	6-94	<i>Electrical Characteristics</i>	2-1
[CTR-MEAS/TRKG]	5-31	<i>Enhanced Versatility</i>	5-10
		<i>Environmental Specifications</i>	2-13
D		error messages	B-1
DANGER	ix	exit, menu	6-4
data bits, RS-232	6-90	external video signal	7-4
data readout	3-9	external amplification/ attenuation	6-7
date and time	6-96	external input/output (I/O)	7-1
DBUV/M	6-13	external pad	6-11
<i>DC Power Source</i>	x	external trigger	6-108, 7-2
decibel - voltage values	6-17		
dedicated controls	5-1	F	
default settings	3-7		
delta (D) marker mode	5-29	factory default settings	3-7
demodulation, video	6-67	feature status indicator	6-2
Demodulator/Tracking		field strength	6-13
Generator (DEMOTG)		file directory	6-97
Menu	4-23, 6-65	file names	6-98
deviation, frequency	6-63	file system	6-97
		files, protecting	6-99
<i>Diagnostics</i>		finding signal peaks	5-35
<i>and Adjustments</i>	6-100	FINE	4-7
directory, file	6-97	first local oscillator	7-1
Display (DSPL) Menu	4-24, 6-34	first measurement	3-13
display brightness	5-37	first mixer input	6-11
		FM DEMODULATOR	6-65
		FM DEVIATION MODE	6-63

1-3

J

J101 — TV Sideband Analyzer	
Interface	7-1
J102 — External Trigger	7-2
J103 — Accessory Connector	7-3
J104 — Digital Communications	
Port	7-8

K

K-factors	6-19
keypad	4-8
KEYPAD ENTERED	
SETTINGS	6-79
keys, terminator	6-4
knob function, changing	6-24
knob, FREQ/MKRS	3-19, 5-5

L

Last Power-Down Settings	6-81
[LIN], linear scale	4-10, 5-16
line trigger	6-108
Listening to AM	
Transmissions	6-66
Listening to FM	
Transmissions	6-65
LOG/LIN scale	5-16

M

mains power	x, 7-1
Making Your First	
Measurement	3-13
MANUAL SCAN	6-112
manual scan	4-11
marker control	5-28
marker functions	4-5
marker readouts	5-28
marker, next higher/lower peak	6-26

Marker/Frequency	
(MKR/FREQ) Menu	4-20, 6-22
markings, equipment	ix
[MAX HOLD A & B]	5-27
[MAX], SPAN	5-4
max/min display	3-9
maximum signal levels	xi
maximum span	4-7
maximum values, retaining	5-27
Measuring Occupied	
Bandwidths (OBW)	6-59
menu display mode	4-2
menu keys	3-10
menu	
APPL	4-22, 6-51
DEMOD/TG	4-23, 6-65
DSPL	4-24, 6-34
INPUT	4-27, 6-5
MKR/FREQ	4-20, 6-22
SWP/TRIG	4-15, 6-106
USER DEF	4-26, 6-113
UTIL	4-16, 6-79
Menu-Entered	
Control Settings	6-79
menus	4-3, 6-1
menus, selecting	6-1
messages	B-1
microvolt per meter	6-13
minimum loss pad	6-11
Minimum Signal Size	6-94
mixer input	6-11
[MKR/D/OFF]	5-28
MKR/FREQ	6-22
mode-related settings	C-2
mounting, rack	3-2

N

noise averaging filter	5-13
noise floor	3-8
noise power difference	5-12
normalization	3-6, 6-85

1-5

S		span/division	1-5, 3-17
		specifications	
safety	ix	electrical	2-1
SATELLITE (FM) VIDEO	6-67	environmental	2-13
[SAVE ENABLE]	5-23	physical	2-14
saving data	5-23	SPECTRAL DISPLAY	
scan, manual	1-5	IN MENUS	6-95
scanning manually	6-112	spectral display mode	4-2
screen alignment	5-37	spectrum	1-5
Screen Plotter Configuration	6-91	spectrum analyzer, defined	1-5
screen, initial display	3-8	spectrum analyzer, heterodyne	1-5
selecting menus	6-1	spectrum analyzer, scanning	1-5
self test	3-5	square brackets	1-3
Sending Waveforms To		STAND BY	3-5
a Computer	6-94	start/stop frequencies,	
sensitivity, increasing	6-21	controlling	6-22
Service Normalizations	6-101	status indicator, feature	6-2
service request (SRQ)	6-104	status indicators, function	3-10
Setting the RF Attenuation	6-6	status indicators, register	3-10
Setting the Tracking Generator		status, changing parameter	6-2
Amplitude	6-73	step size	5-9
settings		stored settings/displays	6-81
fragile	C-4	storing instrument	3-1
mode-related	C-2	summary, operation	4-1
precious	C-2	SWEEP	5-16
settings box	1-2	SWEEP arrow keys	4-13
settings, keypad entry	6-79	sweep control	4-12
short holdoff	6-96	sweep function block	4-12
sideband analyzer interface	7-1	sweep gate	7-5
signal size	6-94	sweep holdoff	6-96
signal sources	A-1	sweep plotting/printing	5-35
signal track	5-33	sweep ramp	7-7
signals, resolving	5-11	sweep rate control	5-16
[SINGLE]	4-12	sweep rate, setting	6-112
single sweep	5-19	SWEEP, [AUTO]	4-13, 5-18
software controls	6-1	sweep, single	5-19
Sounds	3-12	Sweep/Trigger	6-3, 6-106
source impedance	6-8	(SWP/TRIG) Menu	4-15
span per division control	5-2	sweeps, saving	5-23
span per division, maximum	5-4	System Configuration	6-87
span per division, zero	5-4	System Checkout	3-4
[SPAN/DIV]	4-6, 5-2		

T

tabular tuning	6-32
terminator keys	
(W, X, Y, Z)	3-10, 4-8, 5-3, 5-6
Terms In This Manual	ix
Terms Marked On Equipment	ix
TG output level	6-73
TG OUTPUT	4-11
time and date	6-96
time domain	1-5
toggle-action	3-11
trace alignment	5-37
TRACE ROT	5-37
tracking generator (TG)	6-69
tracking, adjusting	6-74
trigger level	6-107
Trigger Modes	6-106
trigger, external	7-2
TRKG	5-33
tuning increment, selecting	6-27
Turning Frequency	
Corrections On and Off	6-94
Turning On the 2711	3-4
TV field trigger	6-112
TV line trigger	6-109
TV sideband analyzer	7-1
TV/FM broadcasts	A-1
Typographical Conventions	1-3

U

UDPs, repeating	6-116
UNCAL	5-12, 5-18
units, reference level	6-7
User-Definable	
(USER DEF) Menu	4-26, 6-113
User-Defined Power-Up	
Settings	6-82
user-defined settings	6-83
Using External Amplification/	
Attenuation With the TG	6-76
Using the Tracking Generator	6-69
Utility (UTIL) Menu	4-16, 6-79

V

versatility, enhanced	5-10
VERT POS	5-37
VERT SCALE	5-15
vertical scale	4-10
vertical scale control	5-15
vertical scale function block	4-10
VF WIDE, VF (bandwidth)	5-14
[VID FLTR]	4-12, 5-13
Video Demodulation	6-67
video filter	5-13
video filter, manual setting	6-80
video input	7-3
video output	7-5
voltage limitations	xi
volume, AM/FM	5-20

W

WAIT FOR END	
OF SWEEP	6-116
WAIT FOR LIMIT	6-116
WARMUP TIME 15 MIN	3-5
WARNING	ix
warnings	B-1
waterfall mode	5-25
waveforms, computer	6-94
weight	2-14
wet/damp conditions	xii
What Is A Spectrum Analyzer?	1-5

Z

[ZERO] SPAN	5-4
zero span	1-5, 4-7

